

U.S. Marines in World War I Centennial Commemorative Series



THE UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
in the

# WORLD WAR

Major Edwin N. McClellan



U.S. Marines in World War I Centennial Commemorative Series

THE UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
in the  
**WORLD  
WAR**

Major Edwin N. McClellan, USMC

First edition published 1920

Second edition 1968

Historical Branch, G-3 Division  
Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps  
Washington, DC 20380

Updated and revised third edition 2014

U.S. Marine Corps  
History Division  
Quantico, VA 22134

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

McClellan, Edwin North, 1881-1971.

The United States Marine Corps in the World War / by Major Edwin N. McClellan, USMC. -- Updated and revised 3rd edition.

pages cm. -- (U.S. Marines in World War I centennial commemorative series ; No. 1)

“First edition published 1920.”

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. United States. Marine Corps--History--World War, 1914-1918. 2. World War, 1914-1918--United States. I. Title.

D570.45.A5 2014

940.4'5973--dc23

2014042905

This pamphlet history, one in a series devoted to U.S. Marines in the First World War, is published for the education and training of Marines by the History Division, Marine Corps University, Quantico, Virginia, as part of the Marine Corps' observance of the centennial anniversary of that war. Editorial costs have been defrayed in part by contributions from members of the Marine Corps Heritage Foundation.



No. 1 in the U.S. Marines in World War I Centennial Commemorative Series

**Dr. Charles P. Neimeyer**  
Director of Marine Corps History

**Charles D. Melson**  
Chief Historian of the Marine Corps

**Angela J. Anderson**  
Series Editor/U.S. Marines in World War I Centennial Commemorative Series

**Vincent J. Martinez**  
Graphic Designer

This printing represents the original work, with minor alterations to the text based on current standards for style, grammar, punctuation, and spelling. Any other revisions to the original text were made based on new statistics available since the time of the 1968 edition.



# CONTENTS

1968 FOREWORD .....	xi
2014 FOREWORD .....	xiii
EXPLANATORY NOTE .....	xx
LETTER OF TRANSMISSION.....	xxi
CHAPTER I.....	1
In General	
CHAPTER II .....	4
Statutory and Actual Strength of the Marine Corps on Various Dates	
CHAPTER III.....	8
Recruiting Applicants, Rejections, Enlistments Enlistments by State	
CHAPTER IV .....	13
Geographical Location and Disposition of Marines During War	
CHAPTER V .....	20
How Officers Were Obtained and Trained	
CHAPTER VI.....	26
Training Enlisted Men in the United States and Europe	

CHAPTER VII .....	33
Organizations and Replacements Sent to Europe Organization of the 4th and 5th Brigades	
CHAPTER VIII .....	48
Operations in General	
CHAPTER IX .....	53
Units Composing, and the Commanding Generals of, the 2d Division-Verdun Operations	
CHAPTER X .....	59
Aisne Defensive, Hill 142, Bouresches, and Bois de la Brigade de Marine in the Château-Thierry Sector	
CHAPTER XI .....	70
The Aisne-Marne Offensive (Soissons)	
CHAPTER XII .....	77
Marbache Sector, Near Pont-à-Mousson Saint-Mihiel Offensive	
CHAPTER XIII .....	79
The Champagne Battle of Blanc Mont Ridge Capture of Saint-Étienne March To Leffincourt	
CHAPTER XIV .....	87
The Meuse-Argonne Offensive Crossing the Meuse River	



CHAPTER XV .....	93
March To the Rhine	
Army of Occupation	
Summary of Operations of the 4th Brigade	
CHAPTER XVI .....	100
With the Navy Onboard the Battleships and Cruisers	
CHAPTER XVII.....	105
The Activities of the 5th Brigade	
CHAPTER XVIII .....	112
Casualties	
CHAPTER XIX .....	117
Citations of Marine Organizations	
Days in France	
Artillery Captured	
Prisoners Captured	
Kilometers Advanced	
Decorations Awarded	
CHAPTER XX.....	120
Rifle Practice	
Rifle and Pistol Competitions	
CHAPTER XXI .....	123
Aviation	
CHAPTER XXII.....	132
Marine Corps Reserve	

CHAPTER XXIII .....	135
Return of Marines from Europe	
Parades in the United States	
CHAPTER XXIV .....	138
Demobilization	
CHAPTER XXV .....	143
Office of the Major General Commandant	
Adjutant and Inspector's Department	
CHAPTER XXVI.....	145
Paymaster's Department	
CHAPTER XXVII .....	154
Quartermaster's Department	
APPENDIX I.....	159
Marine Corps Deaths	
APPENDIX II .....	160
Biographies of Selected	
Marine Corps Leaders	
INDEX.....	215



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Maj Edwin N. McClellan's official portrait taken in 1935.



## 1968 FOREWORD

**F**ifty years ago, men of the 4th Brigade of Marines, 2d Division of Regulars, and of the Day Wing, Northern Bombing Group took part in a memorable series of campaigns in France as part of the American Expeditionary Forces. The names of many of the battles in which they fought, in particular Belleau Wood, became household words to their countrymen. In part to provide a record of the Marine Corps' efforts in World War I, the then-Commandant, Major General George Barnett, directed that a Historical Division be established at Marine Corps Headquarters and that a history of our participation in that war be written.

This monograph, *The United States Marine Corps in the World War* by then-Major Edwin N. McClellan, first published in 1920 and long out of print, has proved to be an accurate, highly useful, and concise accounting of the growth, activities, and combat exploits of Marines. It is particularly fitting that we republish Major McClellan's work in this anniversary year for the many persons, Marines and others, who have expressed interest in this important segment of our history.

In a larger sense, this republication is also a tribute to its author. Lieutenant Colonel McClellan retired in 1936 after 29 years of distinguished service to the Marine Corps. Twice the head of the Historical Division (1919–25 and 1930–33), he wrote a monumental source history of the early years of the Marine Corps, which was made available in manuscript form to many major public and university libraries. "McClellan's History" is still the essential starting

point for any meaningful research into our past. In addition, this dedicated officer wrote numerous articles for professional publications that exposed an entire generation of Marines to the interesting facts, personalities, and events of their heritage.

It is with pleasure that I authorize the republication of this work and commend again a man who in his time was the Marine Corps historian.

L. F. Chapman Jr.  
General, U.S. Marine Corps  
Commandant of the Marine Corps  
Reviewed and Approved: 12 September 1968

## 2014 FOREWORD

LIEUTENANT COLONEL EDWIN NORTH MCCLELLAN:  
A CENTENNIAL TRIBUTE TO THE MARINE  
AND HISTORIAN OF THE CORPS

*by Annette D. Amerman*

**I**t is doubtful that many outside of the Marine Corps' historical community recognize the name of Edwin McClellan; nonetheless, he left a lasting impact on the Corps. As we approach the centennial of Marine participation in the First World War, and with this commemorative reprint of his seminal work *The United States Marine Corps in the World War*, we wish to acknowledge and honor McClellan for his contributions to the historical field and the U.S. Marine Corps.

Edwin North McClellan was born in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, on 5 December 1881 and graduated from Brown Preparatory School in 1902. While he attended law school at the University of Pennsylvania, he was commissioned a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 25 June 1907. His first nine years in the Corps were typical of the time; ship detachment and expeditionary duty abroad—USS *Wisconsin* (BB 9), 1st Brigade in the Philippines, Asiatic Fleet in Shanghai, American Legation in Peking, and in the Caribbean. In 1916, McClellan was assigned to the Judge Advocate General's office at Headquarters Marine Corps and finally completed his law degree at George Washington University.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Then 2dLt Edwin McClellan upon commissioning in 1907.



Just before the United States entered World War I, McClellan was detached from Headquarters and assigned to the USS *Arizona* (BB 39). In March 1917, he was promoted to captain and, just a few months later, received a temporary promotion to major. McClellan remained at sea aboard various vessels throughout 1917 and well into 1918. On 29 September 1918 at 0315, while on board the USS *Minnesota* (BB 22) and only 20 miles off the coast of the Fenwick Island Shoal Light (Delaware), McClellan's ship struck a mine laid by German submarine U-117 and suffered serious damage but managed to return to Philadelphia. Two weeks later, McClellan was transferred to Quantico, Virginia, where he took command of the 9th Separate Battalion, which was heading to France with replacements to support the Marine war effort. However, the war ended with McClellan still in Brest, and he remained there until the end of December when he returned to Marine Barracks Quantico for duty with the 15th Regiment.

In 1919, the Historical Section of the American Expeditionary Forces (AEF) was established in France. Major General Commandant George Barnett immediately contacted the AEF commander, General John J. Pershing, about sending McClellan as the Marine representative.

The major general commandant desires to order Major Edwin N. McClellan, Marine Corps, to report to the commanding general for assignment to duty as historical officer with a view to collecting historical data pertaining to activities of Marines during the operations in Europe. All reports and papers prepared by historical officer to be submitted to [the] commanding general or to [an]other officer designated by him for scrutiny and action. Major McClellan is particularly well qualified for the duty required to be performed. The assent of the commanding general to the desired detail of Major McClellan as historical officer for the Marine Corps is requested.

McClellan was quickly dispatched to Europe and spent the next five months covering every inch of the countryside where Marines had fought and died. His journeys took him from Brest to Chau-

mont, from Germany to Château-Thierry, from Soissons to the south of France and then back to Somme-Py and Verdun. McClellan spent the better part of June in the United Kingdom—London, Cardiff, Edinburgh, Scapa Flow, and Bantry Bay. While the 4th Brigade was still on occupation duty in Germany, McClellan combed through their files and spoke with Marines. Before returning to the states in mid-August, McClellan spent the remainder of his time making his way down the Channel Coast, making several stops in Belgium at Ostend, Bruges, Zeebruges, Dixmude, and Ypres. McClellan's collection effort was the first instance of a Marine deploying to a combat zone to gather documents and stories, just as our modern field history Marines have to Iraq and Afghanistan. For his efforts, he was awarded a special letter of commendation from the secretary of the Navy for his services rendered during the World War.

Upon returning to the United States, McClellan was appointed officer-in-charge of the newly created Historical Section of Headquarters Marine Corps, which was officially recognized by Marine Corps Orders No. 53 (Series 1919) on 8 September 1919, directing that a history of the United States Marine Corps for the period of the First World War be researched and prepared. During the next five years, McClellan not only produced *The United States Marine Corps in the World War* (1920) as directed, but also wrote dozens of articles for *Leatherneck* and *Marine Corps Gazette*, seemingly at the same time. In addition to researching and writing history and, mostly due to his knowledge of the Corps in WWI, McClellan was consulted by the secretary of the Navy's office in preparation for testimony in front of the Senate committee investigating the Navy.<sup>1</sup>

The story of the Marines in the World War not only gives glory to the Navy and to our Country, but has won the gratitude of all who fought for liberty. From the beginning of my administration as Secretary of the Navy, no branch of the Navy has received more encouragement from me than the Marines. What

---

<sup>1</sup> The Senate investigation was related to accusations made by RAdm William S. Sims (wartime commander of all U.S. Naval forces in Europe) that Josephus Daniels' administration of the Navy was mishandled, specifically lacking aggressiveness and not keeping Sims properly informed during the war.

they have done in war and in peace justifies my high opinion of them and their importance in all operations. I wish to give you a summary of its service in the war which you will find more completely set forth in the excellent history prepared by Major Edwin N. McClellan, the able historian of the Marine Corps.

In July 1925, McClellan was transferred out of the Historical Section. For the next five years, McClellan once again globetrotted to Marine posts in Hawaii, California, Oregon, and Nicaragua. His historical skills were put to use while serving with the 2d Brigade in Nicaragua—he was assigned as the official photographer for Marine activities, as well as the officer-in-charge of the brigade’s Historical Section. For his service with the 2d Brigade, McClellan was awarded a letter of commendation by the brigade commander Major General Logan Feland: “Major McClellan distinguished himself by his zeal, discretion and activity in the performance of a difficult and very important duty. He contributed greatly to the successful work of the Brigade.”



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Maj McClellan working at his desk in Nicaragua in 1930.

In June 1931, McClellan returned to Headquarters Marine Corps and into the billet he inaugurated—officer-in-charge of the Historical Section. McClellan's second term as officer-in-charge lasted just two years, as it was determined that his duties to research and write the complete history of the Corps were more important and required his full attention. Therefore, on 2 March 1933, McClellan turned the billet over to Captain Harry A. Ellsworth.

During this time, the roles and responsibilities of the Historical Section were defined and codified, likely with the help and input of McClellan, to include:

1. Maintain Historical Archives, which shall be the repository for all material of a historical nature (i.e., material from which administrative value has disappeared).
2. Prepare correspondence on historical matters.
3. Research and copy historical material pertaining to the Marine Corps from every source available, place copies of such information in the appropriate files of the section, and furnish one copy of such material to the officer preparing Marine Corps history.
4. Cooperate in every practicable way with the officer preparing Marine Corps history.

McClellan earned a reputation for being a tireless worker and was often sought to fill vacancies not only within the Corps but also within the Navy. In 1933, Admiral Ridley R. McLean requested McClellan to join the staff as Battleship Division Three Marine officer. However, as he was still required to research and write the history of the Corps, the request was denied by the Major General Commandant. The Office of Naval Records and Library's director (precursor to today's Naval History and Heritage Command), Captain Dudley W. Knox, often relied on McClellan's research and historical knowledge, frequently done by McClellan while on leave. His work "... entailed a great deal of labor done under the most adverse circumstances and was performed not only with the greatest willingness but also efficiency on the part of Colonel McClellan and I feel deeply grateful to him as well as to you for permitting the work to

be done. Colonel McClellan's special knowledge of naval historical matters enabled him to do the work better than practically any one else could have done."

After several years of expeditionary duty in Haiti and the Philippines, McClellan returned to the United States in 1936 and soon thereafter retired after 29 years of service to the Corps. McClellan enjoyed a long life—dying in 1971 at the age of 90—at home in Philadelphia. His career may not have included action on the battlefield, but McClellan left a legacy that is unsurpassed by those who followed.

McClellan never fully completed his history of the Corps and only a few of the mimeographed volumes remain, yet the impact of his devotion remains in the published history of Marines in the First World War and the more than 100 articles published in *Marine Corps Gazette* and *Leatherneck*. During his time as a Marine Corps historian, McClellan established a high standard of detailed research and extensive writing, a collegial attitude with fellow service historians, and laid the groundwork for how the current Marine Corps History Division collects and writes the history of the Corps today.

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

This brief history has been prepared to acquaint both the personnel of the service and the public with the general facts concerning the United States Marine Corps in the First World War.

The work serves as partial compliance with the instructions contained in Marine Corps Orders No. 53 (Series 1919), directing that a history of the U.S. Marine Corps for the period of the World War be prepared, and as preliminary coverage of the definitive history of the United States Marine Corps during the First World War, which is in course of preparation.

The statistics and other information contained herein are as accurate as it is possible to obtain at the present date. Every effort has been made to avoid expressions of opinions and criticisms or of drawing conclusions of an important nature.

Letter of Transmission

NOVEMBER 26, 1919

From: Officer in Charge Historical Division, Adjutant and Inspector's Department, United States Marine Corps.

To: The Major General Commandant.

Via: Officer in Charge, Adjutant and Inspector's Department.

Subject: The United States Marine Corps in the World War.

1. There is transmitted herewith for your formal approval a concise history of the United States Marine Corps in the World War, including certain statistics, with the recommendation that it be published to the naval service.

EDWIN N. MCCLELLAN

[First endorsement]

ADJUTANT AND INSPECTOR'S DEPARTMENT,  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS,

Washington, DC, November 6, 1919

From: The Acting Adjutant and Inspector.

To: The Major General Commandant.

1. Forwarded, approved.

H. C. HAINES

Approved:

GEORGE BARNETT,

Major General Commandant,

United States Marine Corps

Approved:

JOSEPHUS DANIELS,

Secretary of the Navy





# CHAPTER I

## IN GENERAL

When a state of war was declared to exist on 6 April 1917, the United States Marine Corps was composed of 462 commissioned officers, 49 warrant officers, and 13,214 enlisted men on active duty, [for] a total of 13,725 and, while the Corps was expanded to an actual strength, including reserves, of 75,101 officers and enlisted men, its high standard was never lowered. When these figures are compared with the approximate strength of 3,100 at the end of the Civil War, and of 4,800 at the end of the Spanish War, the growth of the Marine Corps is illustrated.

Despite the fact that, on the outbreak of war, 187 officers and 4,546 enlisted men were on duty beyond the continental limits of the United States, and 49 officers, and 2,187 enlisted men were serving on board the cruising vessels of the Navy, only five weeks later, on 14 June 1917, the 5th Regiment, consisting of 70 officers and 2,689 enlisted men, approximately one-sixth of the enlisted strength of the Marine Corps, competently organized and ready for active service, sailed on the USS *Henderson* [AP 1], *De Kalb* [ID 3010], and *Hancock* [AP 3] from the United States, forming one-fifth of the first expedition of American troops for service in France.

This regiment was soon joined by the 6th Regiment and the 6th Machine Gun Battalion, and the 4th Brigade was organized, and as one of the two infantry brigades of the 2d Division of Regulars engaged in actual battle in no less than eight distinct operations in France, of which four were major operations.

The French Army\* recognized the splendid work of the 5th and 6th Regiments by citing them no less than three times in Army orders for achievements in the Château-Thierry sector, in the Aisne-Marne (Soissons) offensive, and in the Meuse-Argonne (Champagne). The 6th Machine Gun Battalion was similarly cited for its work in the Château-Thierry sector and Aisne-Marne (Soissons) offensive. The 4th Brigade received a similar citation for its work in the Château-Thierry sector. Since two French Army citations are sufficient to make an organization eligible for the award of the French fourragère, the high standard of the Marine units is evident. Information was received in January 1920, that the War Department had accepted the award of the French fourragère in the colors of the ribbon of the Croix de Guerre for several [U.S.] Army organizations and the three units of the 4th Brigade.

Within one year after the outbreak of war, the Marine Corps placed about as many enlisted men in France as there were in the Marine Corps when war was declared.

During the month of June 1918, when the battle deaths around Hill 142, Bouresches, Belleau Wood, and Vaux, of Americans attached to the 2d Division amounted to 1,811 (of which at least 1,062 were Marines) and the nonfatal casualties to 7,252 more (of which 3,615 were Marines), the legislative strength of the Marine Corps was but 1,323 officers and 30,000 enlisted men; the actual strength on 30 June 1918, including Reserves, was 1,424 officers and 57,298 enlisted men, and of this total about 300 officers and 14,000 enlisted men were in France.

These latter figures include those Marines who suffered casualties in the battles of June 1918.

Approximately 30,000 Marines were sent overseas to join the American Expeditionary Forces and 1,600 for naval duty ashore. During the war, a great many additional Marine detachments were detailed to guard the radio stations, naval magazines, ammunition depots, warehouses, cable stations and for other naval activities, and the detachments already established were largely augmented. No call

---

\* For clarity, the term "army" will be lowercased when referring to non-American forces except when used with formal unit names, such as the French Army, and uppercased when referring to the U.S. Army.

was made for additional Marines for naval purposes that was not fully met, and this is of especial interest as the Marine Corps is essentially a part of the [U.S.] naval establishment, and its first duty is to fill all naval needs and requirements. It was believed to be essential that the Marine Corps should do its full part in this war, and for that reason it was absolutely necessary that the Marines should join the Army on the western front, taking care, however, that this should not at any time interfere in the slightest degree with the filling of all naval requirements.

The Marine Corps, while maintaining the 4th Brigade, a total of 258 officers and 8,211 enlisted men that fought in eight battle operations suffering approximately 12,000 casualties, placed and maintained the 5th Brigade of the same strength in France; supplied the commanding general of the 2d Division with many officers on his staff; furnished a considerable number of officers to command Army units of the 2d [Division] and other divisions, and for staff and detached duty throughout the American Expeditionary Forces; participated in the naval aviation activities in France and in the Azores; and during the period of the war, succeeded in performing in a highly satisfactory manner the naval duties required of it, including the maintenance of two brigades of prewar strength standing by to protect the Mexican oil fields, and as an advanced base force in Philadelphia, one in Cuba, one in Santo Domingo, and one in Haiti; administered and officered the Haitian Gendarmerie and Guardia Nacional Dominicana; as well as provid[ed] efficient Marine detachments for numerous naval vessels and maintain[ed] garrisons at the numerous Navy yards and naval stations in the United States and in the Virgin Islands, Guantanamo Bay (Cuba), Pearl Harbor (Hawaiian Islands), Guam, Cavite and Olongapo (P[hillipines]), Managua (Nicaragua), Peking (China), San Juan (P[uerto] R[ico]), London (England), Cardiff (Wales), Paris (France), and the Azores; and supplied many officers and enlisted men for special and detached duty at home and abroad.

## CHAPTER II

### STATUTORY AND ACTUAL STRENGTH OF THE MARINE CORPS ON VARIOUS DATES

#### *Statutory Strength*

**T**he act of Congress on 29 August 1916 increased the authorized strength of the Marine Corps from 344 officers and 9,921 enlisted men to 597 officers and 14,981 enlisted men, and the president was authorized in an emergency to further increase the Corps to 693 officers and 17,400 enlisted men, which he did by executive order on 26 March 1917.

On 6 April 1917, Congress declared “that a state of war exists between the United States and the Imperial German Government” and one and one-half months later, on 22 May 1917, temporarily increased the authorized strength to 1,197 commissioned officers, 126 warrant officers, and 30,000 enlisted men. Finally, the act of 1 July 1918 temporarily increased the Marine Corps to 3,017 commissioned officers, 324 warrant officers, and 75,500 enlisted men, which is the maximum strength ever authorized for the Marine Corps. Of this number, 17,400 were permanent and 57,650 temporary. In addition to the above, the act of 29 August 1916, which established the Marine Corps Reserve, permits the enrollment of Reserves without limit as to number and, on 6 April 1917, there were enrolled, subject to call to active duty, 3 Reserve commissioned officers, 24 national naval volunteer officers, 36 Reserve enlisted men, and 928 enlisted national naval volunteers. There were also available for recall to ac-

tive duty 65 regular retired commissioned officers, 1 regular retired warrant officer, and 210 regular retired enlisted men.

*Actual Strength of the Marine Corps  
at the Beginning and End of the War*

On 6 April 1917, the strength of the Marine Corps on active duty was as follows:

Regular commissioned officers:	
Major General Commandant	1
Brigadier generals	7
Colonels	13
Lieutenant colonels	27
Majors	59
Captains	119
First lieutenants	87
Second lieutenants	106
<b>Total regular officers</b>	<b>419</b>
Regular commissioned retired officers:	
On active duty	43
Regular warrant officers:	
Marine gunners	20
Quartermaster clerks	20
Pay clerks	9
<b>Total warrant officers</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Total regular enlisted men</b>	<b>13,214</b>
<b>Total strength on active duty</b>	<b>13,725</b>

On 11 November 1918, the strength of the Marine Corps on active duty was as follows:

Regular commissioned officers:	
Major General Commandant	1
Major generals	2
Brigadier generals	13
Colonels	43
Lieutenant colonels	52
Majors	199

*Chapter II*

Captains	522
First lieutenants	436
Second lieutenants	413
<b>Total regular officers</b>	<b>1,681</b>
Commissioned retired officers:	
On active duty	43
Reserve officers on active duty:	
Majors	7
Captains	33
First lieutenants	63
Second lieutenants	360
<b>Total Reserve officers</b>	<b>463</b>
<b>Total commissioned officers on active duty</b>	<b>2,187</b>
Regular warrant officers:	
Marine gunners	109
Quartermaster clerks	89
Pay clerks	56
<b>Total</b>	<b>254</b>
Reserve warrant officers:	
Marine gunners	27
Quartermaster clerks	2
Pay clerks	4
<b>Total</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Total warrant officers on active duty</b>	<b>287</b>
<b>Total officers on active duty</b>	<b>2,474</b>
Enlisted personnel:	
Regular	63,714
Retired enlisted on active duty	15
Reserves on active duty	6,483
Female reservists on active duty	277
<b>Total enlisted</b>	<b>70,489</b>
<b>Total strength on active duty</b>	<b>72,963</b>

On 11 December 1918, the Marine Corps attained its maximum strength on active duty, which was distributed as follows:

Regular commissioned officers	1,678
Retired officers on active duty	44
Reserve commissioned officers	452
Regular warrant officers	257
Reserve warrant officers	31
Regular enlisted	65,666
Reserve enlisted	6,704
Female reservists	269
<b>Total</b>	<b>75,101</b>

The maximum enlisted strength of the regular Marine Corps, not including Reserves, during the period between the outbreak of war and the date the armistice became operative was 63,714 on 9 November 1918.

## CHAPTER III

### RECRUITING

#### APPLICANTS, REJECTIONS, ENLISTMENTS

#### ENLISTMENTS BY STATE

**T**he recruiting service of the Corps was enlarged greatly during the war and it was so well organized and its method of procedure was so efficient that it was able to stand the enormous increase of the Corps. The real test of any organization comes when a very great increase is suddenly made and the recruiting service of the Marine Corps passed that test in a commendable manner.

On 8 August 1918, by executive order, volunteer enlistments in the Marine Corps and enrollments in the Reserve were stopped and, from that time until 1 October 1918, no men were enlisted in the Corps with the exception of those whose cases were pending when the executive order above mentioned was issued and some whose enlistments expired and were reenlisted. On 16 September 1918, the secretary of war approved the terms of a tentative plan proposed in an informal conference by representatives of the Navy Department, the Marine Corps, the General Staff, and the Provost Marshal General's Office.

This plan, in part, provided that the Marine Corps was accorded the privilege of individual inductions to the amount of 5,000 men for the months of October, November, and December 1918, and January 1919, and 1,500 thereafter.



As the plan above operated, the men were supplied from the selective draft, but the choice was given the Marine Corps of accepting or rejecting men according to the way they measured up to the Marine Corps' standards. The inductees also had a choice in the matter, so they were really "voluntary inductees." This plan was very favorable and permitted the Marine Corps to maintain its high standard of enlisted personnel.

Owing to the cessation of hostilities, there were but few inductions and none of the inductees ever reached France prior to the armistice becoming effective. Regular voluntary inductions into the Marine Corps (through [the] provost marshal general) commenced [on] 1 October 1918, and the last man was voluntarily inducted on 13 December 1918. Inductions occurred as follows:

October 1918	2,787
November 1918	3,880
December 1918	421
<b>Total</b>	<b>7,088</b>

Owing to the signing of the armistice, no more requests were made to the provost marshal general for the induction of men after 18 November 1918.

On 2 December 1918, the president, by proclamation, directed that voluntary enlistments of registrants into the Navy and Marine Corps would be permitted without notice to local boards, and the provisions of the selective service law became inoperative [in]sofar as the Marine Corps was concerned.

On 4 December 1918, recruiting on a very limited scale was resumed by order of the secretary of the Navy. On that date also, enrollments in the Marine Corps Reserve were stopped.

*Applicants, Rejections, Enlistments, etc., Regular Marine Corps, not Including Reserves but Including Inductees, April 1917 to November 1918*

Date	Applicants	Rejected by commanding officer <sup>1</sup>	Rejected by medical officer <sup>2</sup>	Eloped	Declined oath	Enlistments	Strength Marine Corps
1 APR							13,214
30 APR	14,607	41	11,673	10	19	2,864	15,813
31 MAY	15,498	74	10,039	40	50	5,295	20,932
30 JUN	15,905	47	11,935	16	34	4,073	24,772
31 JUL	11,778	21	8,183	22	44	3,508	27,045
31 AUG	6,275	37	4,006	7	4	2,221	29,861
30 SEP	4,846	29	3,996	5	5	811	30,322
31 OCT	4,335	33	3,661	5	1	635	30,576
30 NOV	5,577	14	4,942	2	2	617	30,855
31 DEC	6,788	22	5,305	4	5	1,452	32,016
31 JAN	5,472	29	3,981	5	3	1,454	33,184
28 FEB	5,915	31	5,772	4	3	105	33,045
31 MAR	5,037	18	4,734	2	4	279	33,093
30 APR	15,958	44	12,996	3	5	2,910	35,690
31 MAY	18,336	73	12,956	7	22	5,278	40,722
30 JUN	23,864	70	18,609	17	36	5,132	45,384
31 JUL	20,162	224	11,767	9	10	8,152	52,712
31 AUG	17,286	115	11,528	5	40	5,598	57,628
30 SEP	16,175	199	13,484	5	83	2,404	59,556
31 OCT	12,176	2	8,923		1	3,250	62,142
30 NOV	13,284	2	9,129		2	4,151	65,489
<b>Total</b>	<b>239,274</b>	<b>1,125</b>	<b>177,619</b>	<b>168</b>	<b>373</b>	<b>60,189</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Rejections by commanding officer include minors whose parents refused consent, married men whose wives refused consent, and men with criminal records or who were otherwise undesirable.

<sup>2</sup> Rejections by medical officer include all rejections at recruiting office as well as those rejected by the medical officer at the recruit depot to which they were transferred.

*Enlistments by State*

The following table shows the number of men enlisted in the Marine Corps, not including Reserves enrolled but including inductees, between 1 April 1917 and 11 November 1918. These figures do not include the 13,214 enlisted men already in the Marine Corps on 6 April 1917:

Alabama	313
Arizona	210
Arkansas	290
California	2,527
Colorado	1,262
Connecticut	240
Delaware	72
District of Columbia	451
Florida	110
Georgia	674
Illinois	4,959
Idaho	508
Indiana	1,182
Iowa	607
Kansas	673
Louisiana	832
Maine	24
Massachusetts	1,957
Maryland	867
Michigan	2,115
Minnesota	2,581
Missouri	3,721
Mississippi	297
Montana	1,205
Nebraska	461
Nevada	86
New Jersey	1,251
New Hampshire	67
New Mexico	25
New York	6,782

*Chapter III*

North Carolina	488
North Dakota	225
Ohio	4,968
Oklahoma	384
Oregon	1,006
Pennsylvania	4,365
Rhode Island	64
South Carolina	66
South Dakota	145
Tennessee	1,418
Texas	2,205
Utah	898
Vermont	21
Virginia	617
Washington	1,767
West Virginia	598
Wisconsin	876
Wyoming	92
<b>Total</b>	<b>57,144</b>

Statistics that will show the exact number of officers and enlisted men from each state are being prepared.

## CHAPTER IV

### GEOGRAPHICAL LOCATION AND DISPOSITION OF MARINES DURING WAR

**D**uring the period of the war, Marines served ashore and afloat all over the world. The following tables show where they were located at the outbreak of war and on the date the armistice became operative; also the naval vessels on which Marines were serving on both of these dates; and the geographical location of Marines during the war.

#### *Location of Marines on 6 April 1917 and 11 November 1918*

Location	6 April 1917			11 November 1918		
	Officers	Men	Total	Officers	Men	Total
American Expeditionary Forces (AEF)				857 <sup>1</sup>	23,698	24,555
Azores				11	188	199
China	8	268	276	11	271	282
Cuba	16	580	596	99	2,310	2,409
England (AEF) <i>See AEF</i>						0
England (not AEF)				2	69	71

France (AEF) <i>See AEF</i>						0
France (not AEF)				146	1,030	1,176
Germany (AEF) <i>See AEF</i>						
Guam	9	383	392	14	366	380
Haiti	62	622	684	60	825	885
Hawaiian Islands	3	137	140	10	466	476
Holland (The Hague)					3	3
Nicaragua	3	111	114	5	118	123
Philippine Islands	7	272	279	12	582	594
Puerto Rico (San Juan)				1	77	78
Samoa				1		1
Santo Domingo	69	1,856	1,925	84	1,879	1,963
Sea duty	49	2,187	2,236	64	2,009	2,073
Spain (Madrid)					1	1
United States [CONUS]	183	6,481	6,664	1,029	36,004	37,033
Virgin Islands	10	317	327	25	583	608
<b>Total</b>	<b>419</b>	<b>13,214</b>	<b>13,633</b>	<b>2,431</b>	<b>70,479</b>	<b>73,910</b>

<sup>1</sup> Including enlisted men commissioned in Europe.

### *Marines Serving Onboard Naval Vessels*

Marine detachments served onboard all the overseas battleships and on the battleships of Battleship Force 2 throughout the war. The Marines of Battleship Force 1 of which the *Minnesota* was flagship were temporarily withdrawn in April 1918.

Marines were also onboard a great many of the cruisers that acted as escorts for the vessels transporting [U.S.] Army troops to Europe.

The following table\* shows in detail those vessels that carried Marine detachments at the beginning of the war and on Armistice Day:

Ship	6 April 1917		11 November 1918	
	Officers	Men	Officers	Men
Atlantic Fleet	1		1	
Pacific Fleet	1		1	
Asiatic Fleet	1		1	
Battleship Force 2				
Battleship Force [1]	1			
Cruiser Force			1	
Division 6	1		1	
Division 7	1			
Division 8			1	
Division 9 (6th Battle Squadron)			1	
USS <i>Alabama</i> (BB 8)	1	40		
USS <i>Arizona</i> (BB 39)	2	83	2	88
USS <i>Arkansas</i> (BB 33)	1	76	2	86
USS <i>Brooklyn</i> (CA 3)	2	69	2	98
USS <i>Castine</i> (PG 6)		20		
USS <i>Charleston</i> (C 22)			2	62
USS <i>Cincinnati</i> (C 7)	1	40	1	41
USS <i>Columbia</i> (C 12)		19		
USS <i>Connecticut</i> (BB 18)	3	65		
USS <i>Constellation</i> (1854)		6		7
USS <i>Delaware</i> (BB 28)	1	65	2	70
USS <i>Denver</i> (C 14)	1	40		
USS <i>Des Moines</i> (C 15)		38		
USS <i>Dolphin</i> (PG 24)		15		20
USS <i>Florida</i> (BB 30)	1	66	2	63
USS <i>Frederick</i> (CA 8)			2	64
USS <i>Galveston</i> (C 17)	1	39	1	40

\* Information was updated to accommodate for the current style of military ship designation.

Chapter IV

USS <i>George Washington</i> (ID 3018)			2	97
USS <i>Helena</i> (PG 9)	1	30	1	25
USS <i>Huntington</i> (CA 5)			2	61
USS <i>Idaho</i> (SP 545)			2	19
USS <i>Louisiana</i> (BB 19)	1	64		
USS <i>Machias</i> (PG 5)		20		
USS <i>Mayflower</i> (PY 1)		15		5
USS <i>Michigan</i> (BB 27)	2	62		
USS <i>Minnesota</i> (BB 22)	2	68		
USS <i>Mississippi</i> (BB 23)			2	78
USS <i>Montana</i> (ACR 13)	1	62	2	72
USS <i>Nebraska</i> (BB 14)	1	68		
USS <i>Nevada</i> (BB 36)	1	77	2	79
USS <i>New Hampshire</i> (BB 25)	1	67		
USS <i>New Jersey</i> (BB 16)	1	6		
USS <i>New Mexico</i> (BB 40)			2	68
USS <i>New York</i> (BB 34)	1	77	2	20
USS <i>North Carolina</i> (ACR 12)			2	65
USS <i>North Dakota</i> (BB 29)	1	64	2	65
USS <i>Oklahoma</i> (BB 37)	2	77	2	80
USS <i>Olympia</i> (C 6)	1	40		
USS <i>Pennsylvania</i> (BB 38)	1	94	3	133
USS <i>Pittsburgh</i> (CA 4)	2	75	2	105
USS <i>Prairie</i> (AD 5)		19		
USS <i>Pueblo</i> (CA 7)	1	69	2	15
USS <i>Rhode Island</i> (BB 17)	1	64		
USS <i>Seattle</i> (ACR 11)	1	61		
USS <i>South Carolina</i> (BB 26)	2	65		
USS <i>South Dakota</i> (ACR 9)			2	59
USS <i>St. Louis</i> (C 20)			2	62
USS <i>Texas</i> (BB 35)	1	72	2	78
USS <i>Utah</i> (BB 31)	2	62	2	72
USS <i>Wilmington</i> (PG 8)	1	30	1	30



USS <i>Wyoming</i> (BB 32)	1	78	2	82
USS <i>Yorktown</i> (PG 1)		20		
<b>Total</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>2,187</b>	<b>64</b>	<b>2,009</b>

In addition to the above-named vessels, Marines served on the USS *Leviathan* (SP 1326), *Albany* (CL 23), *New Orleans* (CL 22), *Georgia* (BB 15), *Kansas* (BB 21), *Vermont* (BB 20), *San Diego* (CA 6), and *Virginia* (BB 13).

### *Geographical Location of Marines During the War*

During the period of the war Marines were stationed at the following posts:

#### UNITED STATES

**Navy yards and stations:** Portsmouth, New Hampshire; Boston, [Massachusetts]; New York; Philadelphia, [Pennsylvania]; Annapolis, [Maryland]; Washington, DC; Norfolk, Virginia; Charleston, South Carolina; Key West, Florida; Pensacola, Florida; New Orleans, [Louisiana]; Mare Island, California; Puget Sound, Washington; and North Island, California.

**Naval magazines:** Hingham, Massachusetts; Fort Lafayette, [New York]; Iona Island, New York; Lake Denmark, New Jersey; Fort Muffin, Pennsylvania; St. Julien's Creek, Virginia; and Mare Island, California.

**Naval ammunition depots:** Dover, New Jersey, and New London, Connecticut.

**Torpedo stations:** Puget Sound, Washington, and Newport, Rhode Island.

**Radio stations, etc.:** Greenbury, Maryland; Point Isabel, Texas; Radio, Virginia; Key West, Florida; Chatham, Massachusetts; Portland, Maine; Rye Beach, Maine; Otter Cliffs, Maine; naval radio station, Wellfleet, Massachusetts; French Cable Co., Orleans, Massachusetts; Postal Telegraph and Cable Co., Rockport, Massachusetts; Commercial Telegraph & Cable Co., Boston; Marconi Wireless Co., Boston; Western Union Co., Boston; Cape Cod, Massachusetts; Sayville,

New York; New Brunswick, New Jersey; Belmar, New Jersey; Tuckerton, New Jersey; Beaufort, South Carolina; Charleston, South Carolina Annapolis, Maryland.; Washington, DC; San Diego, California; Chollas Heights, California; Point Arguello, California; Inglewood, California; East San Pedro, California; Eureka, California; Bolinas, California; Marshall, California; Farallon Islands, California; Marshfield, Oregon; Astoria, Oregon; Lents, Oregon; Tatoosh [Island], Washington; and North Head, Washington.

**Naval prisons:** Portsmouth, New Hampshire; Parris Island, South Carolina; and Mare Island, California.

**Naval hospitals:** Boston; New York; Washington, DC; Norfolk, Virginia; Key West, Florida; and Fort Lyons, Colorado.

**Coaling stations:** La Playa, California, and Tiburon, California.

**Receiving ship:** Boston.

**Other places:** Headquarters, Washington, DC; Office of the Judge Advocate General; assistant paymasters' offices at New York, Atlanta, Georgia, and San Francisco, California; depots of supplies at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, San Francisco, California, and Charleston, South Carolina; naval experimental station, New London, Connecticut; naval district base, New London, Connecticut; advanced base force, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania; mobilization bureau, New York City; third naval district base, New York; New Navy Building guard, Washington, DC; naval mine station, Yorktown, Virginia; naval base, Hampton Roads, Virginia; Navy rifle range, Wakefield, Massachusetts; rifle range, Winthrop, Maryland; naval proving grounds, Indian Head, Maryland; Wissahickon Barracks, New Jersey; Navy fuel depot, Curtis, Maryland; Navy ordnance plant, Charleston, West Virginia; camp of instruction, bayonet team, Lansdowne, Pennsylvania; signal battalion, Paoli, Pennsylvania; staff office, San Francisco California; Marine Barracks Quantico, Virginia; Fort Crockett, Galveston, Texas; Gerstner Field, Lake Charles, Louisiana; naval air station, Cape May, New Jersey; naval air station, San Diego, California; naval school for mechanics, Great

Lakes, Illinois; naval air station, Pensacola, Florida; Army training field, Mineola, Long Island, New York; Marine Corps School of Machine Gun Instruction at Utica, New York; and Massachusetts Institute of Technology [MIT], Boston, Massachusetts.

## BEYOND CONTINENTAL LIMITS OF UNITED STATES

**American Expeditionary Forces:** France, England, and Germany.

**With naval service in Europe:** Paris, France; Pauillac, France; London, England; Marine aerodromes between Calais and Dunkirk, France; Croix d'Hins, Gironde, France; naval base, Ponta Delgada, Azores Islands; and Cardiff, Wales.

**Naval stations:** Cavite, P[hilippine] I[slands]; Olongapo [City], P. I.; Pearl Harbor, Hawaii; Guantanamo Bay, Cuba; Virgin Islands; and Guam.

**Occupation forces:** Santo Domingo, Haiti.

**Legation guards:** Peking, China, and Managua, Nicaragua.

**Couriers:** Madrid, Spain; The Hague, Holland; Luxembourg; Jassy, Romania; Stockholm, Sweden; Copenhagen, Denmark; Christiania, Norway; Petrograd, Archangel, Murman Coast, Russia; Paris, France; London, England; Athens, Greece; and Rome, Italy.

**Constabularies:** Guardia Nacional Dominicana and Haitian gendarmerie.

**Radio stations:** Cavite, Philippines; San Juan, Puerto Rico; El Cayey, Puerto Rico; Haiti; and Croix d'Hins, Gironde, France.

**Naval ammunition depot:** Olongapo, P. I.

**Naval magazine:** Pearl Harbor, Hawaii.

**Depot of supplies:** Cavite, Philippines.

**Attachés:** Paris, France; London, England; Yokohama, Japan; Petrograd [now Saint Petersburg], Russia; Stockholm, Sweden; Copenhagen, Denmark; and Christiania, Norway.

# CHAPTER V

## HOW OFFICERS WERE OBTAINED AND TRAINED

### *How Officers Were Obtained*

The outbreak of war made it essential that the Corps should be filled as far as practicable with officers who had prior military experience and training, and immediate steps were taken to arrange for the designation and examination of Marine Corps warrant officers, noncommissioned officers, graduates of military colleges, and other civilians with military experience and training.

The appointment of officers subsequent to the declaration of war up to October 1917, both for the permanent service and for the temporary increase authorized for the duration of the war, were drawn from the following sources:

Graduates of the Naval Academy	6
Former officer of the Marine Corps	1
Former graduate of the Naval Academy	1
Warrant officers and paymaster's clerks of the Marine Corps	89
Meritorious noncommissioned officers of the Marine Corps	122
Reserve officers and national naval volunteers	36
Graduates of military colleges	284
Other civilians with prior military or naval experience or training	136
Other civilians passing the comprehensive examination held 10 July 1917	86

In order to expedite the training of the new officers, advantage was taken of the law providing for a Marine Corps Reserve, and successful candidates were immediately enrolled as second lieutenants in the Reserve and ordered to Marine Corps posts for instruction pending the issuance of their commissions in the Regular Service. Candidates designated for the examination held 10 July 1917 were authorized upon designation to enroll as privates in the Marine Corps Reserve, with the understanding that, upon the completion of their examination, they would be ordered to the [Marine Corps] Recruit Depot at Parris Island, South Carolina, for training pending the receipt of the report of the examining board. This policy was carried out, and the successful candidates were commissioned second lieutenants in the Marine Corps, while the unsuccessful candidates were given the option of continuing in the Service as enlisted men or of being discharged.

Owing to the unusually large number of young men of excellent education and fine attainments who had enlisted in the Marine Corps after the outbreak of war, it was decided that no further appointments of civilians to the rank of second lieutenant would be made during the continuance of the war, and that all vacancies occurring in that grade (not required for graduates of the Naval Academy) would be filled by the promotion of meritorious non-commissioned officers. This decision was promulgated to the Service in Marine Corps Orders No. 25 (Series 1917).

### *How Officers Were Trained*

The officers appointed from civil life, as soon as enrolled, were ordered to the Marine barracks at Mare Island, California; San Diego, California; Parris Island, South Carolina; and [to] the Marine Corps rifle range, Winthrop, Maryland, for instruction, pending the completion of the buildings for their use at Marine Barracks Quantico. Early in July 1917, the buildings being in readiness, the newly appointed officers, about 345 in number, were assembled at Quantico, where an officers' camp of instruction was held, and the course completed in October 1917.

In carrying out the policy of obtaining officers from the ranks, orders were issued to commanding officers of every post and station of the Marine Corps, both at home and abroad as well as those onboard ship, to the effect that all commissioned officers would be taken from the ranks and that the number of men to be designated from each post to attend the training camp would be a certain percentage of the number of men stationed at such post or station. Each commanding officer was ordered to convene a board of three officers to examine the qualifications of the men at his post and to report in the order of merit the names of the men considered qualified for entry to the officers' training camp at Quantico. These reports were all forwarded to Headquarters, where a board was convened to examine them and to select, in accordance with their standing as reported by the various boards, the number of men who could be quartered and properly instructed at Quantico. It was found that about 600 was the limit that could be accommodated, and approximately this number was selected for the first camp, which was established at Quantico, Virginia, in April 1918.

The officers' training camp was commanded by an officer of adequate rank. The students were divided into companies with a major in command as chief instructor and captains and lieutenants to assist him. The candidates were given a very rigid course of instruction and intensive training. Some of the studies pursued were: infantry drill regulations, manual of interior guard duty, bayonet training, bombing, minor tactics, military engineering, military topography, administration, military law, lectures on gas and on sea duty, and a practical course on the rifle range.

The training at these camps was most intensive and thoroughly competitive, so that a man's position depended entirely upon himself. The material to draw from was so excellent that comparatively few of those who entered the camps failed to receive commissions and many of the young men commissioned, who were assigned to duty abroad, demonstrated that their selection was fully justified. Many officers also received special training in the schools of the Overseas Depot at Quantico.

The majority of the members of the first officers' training camp graduated in July 1918. Three hundred of this camp were commissioned on 15 July 1918, and 91 [were commissioned] on 15 August 1918.

The same proportionate allowance that was made in the United States was also designated for the Marines serving in France, and similar means were instituted there to carry out the policy of selection of men for the training camp. As a result of the camp established over there, 164 second lieutenants were appointed from the 4th Brigade in France.

The second officers' training camp was opened at Quantico on 20 August 1918; the enlisted men forming its personnel [were] selected in exactly the same manner as those attending the first camp and this procedure was also followed with regard to the Marines of the American Expeditionary Forces [AEF] in France. Of the 570 men enrolled, 432 graduated from the second officers' training camp [on] 16 December 1918, and 172 from the Army candidate school in France, who immediately upon graduating were enrolled as second lieutenants (provisional) in class 4, Marine Corps Reserve, and subsequently appointed temporary second lieutenants in the Marine Corps. An extension of three weeks to this course in America was necessitated by the epidemic of influenza.

There were 235 graduated in July 1919 from the third officers' training camp, who were enrolled as second lieutenants (provisional) in class 4, Marine Corps Reserve, and immediately assigned to inactive duty.

There were also 48 graduates of the Army candidate school in France, who were enrolled as second lieutenants (provisional) in class 4, Marine Corps Reserve, and who were discharged or placed on inactive duty upon their return to the United States, with the exception of 4 [graduates] who were transferred to the temporary Service.

Sixty-nine officers graduated from the Marine Corps School of Machine Gun Instruction at Utica, New York. Information regarding the training of Marine officers for aviation duties will be found in chapter XXI.

### *Marine Sections, Student Army Training Corps*

In the act approved [on] 31 August 1918, provision was made for a Student Army Training Corps, and [on] 12 September 1918, the secretary of war directed the provost marshal general to allot 1,500 of the registrants authorized for induction into the Student Army Training Corps to the Marine sections under that organization. On 23 September 1918, with the approval of the Navy Department, Marine Corps Headquarters designated the following institutions for the organization of Marine sections of the Student Army Training Corps and allotted quotas to each ranging from 100 to 190 [students]:

Leland Stanford Junior University	110
Georgia School of Technology	100
Harvard University	120
University of Minnesota	110
Cornell University	170
University of Washington	160
University of Texas	100
Yale University	100
University of Kansas	140
University of Wisconsin	190
Virginia Military Institute	100
University of North Carolina	100

A Marine officer was ordered to each of the designated institutions and charged with the duties of administration, instruction, and discipline of the Marine section with the assistance of a noncommissioned officer of the Marine Corps.

It was intended to transfer, from time to time, well-qualified students who were inducted into Marine sections of the Student Army Training Corps to aviation duty or to one of the two recruit camps, and in both cases men thus recommended, who proved themselves qualified to become officers, would be ultimately commissioned in either the Marine Corps Reserve Flying Corps or for general service in the Marine Corps. In either case, after finishing their course in the Student Army Training Corps, they would have been sent to a



recruit camp for the regular course of training because this would make it possible to imbue them with the necessary esprit de corps and indoctrinate them with the Marine Corps methods of procedure and training, both essential to the making of a Marine officer of the highest [caliber]. Owing to the end of active hostilities, there were no graduates from the Marine sections of the Student Army Training Corps at the different universities and colleges as they were ordered abandoned shortly after the armistice became operative.

## CHAPTER VI

### TRAINING ENLISTED MEN IN THE UNITED STATES AND EUROPE

#### *United States*

**T**he Marine Corps system of training for enlisted personnel during the war was thorough and excellent in every respect and resulted in the turning out of men who proved themselves well fitted for the arduous duties of Marines.

For a short time after the outbreak of the war, temporary recruit depots were opened at the navy yards at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, and Norfolk, Virginia, with a capacity of 2,500 at the former and 500 at the latter. These were used until the regular recruit depots at Parris Island, South Carolina, and Mare Island, California, could accommodate the recruits. These two recruit depots were greatly enlarged both in size and scope to take care of the temporary increase in strength authorized for the war and were soon able to meet all demands made upon them.

At the beginning of the war, the course of recruit instruction at the [Marine Corps] Recruit Depot, Parris Island, was of eight-weeks duration and, with but very few exceptions, every recruit passing through this depot received eight weeks [of] instruction. At the Mare Island recruit depot, the recruits received 12 weeks [of] training over 6–28 April 1917, 9 weeks [of training] from 29 April 1917 to 21 June 1918, and 8 weeks [of training] from 22 June to 11 November 1918.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
U.S. Marines practice marksmanship while going through recruit training at Marine Barracks Parris Island, South Carolina, during World War I.

The following table gives a list of the special schools at the Parris Island Recruit Depot and the number of graduates from each during the period between the outbreak of war and the date the armistice became operative:

Noncommissioned Officers School	2,144
Field Musics School	493
Radio School	143
Signal School	232
Band School	247
Clerical School	236
Pay School	78
Cooks and Bakers School	150
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,723</b>

The following table illustrates what was accomplished by the two recruit depots:

Depot	In training		Maximum strength of post	Maximum number of recruits at one time	Total recruits handled	Maximum capacity
	6 April 1917	11 November 1918				
Parris Island	835	4,104	16,601	13,286	46,202	13,069
Mare Island	358	1,143	2,799	2,470	11,901	3,000
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,193</b>	<b>5,247</b>	<b>19,400</b>	<b>15,756</b>	<b>58,103</b>	<b>16,069</b>

After leaving the recruit depots at Parris Island and Mare Island, advanced training was given [to] the men at Quantico. This training was most intensive and, as a result, all the organizations that were trained there attained a high state of efficiency. It was made to approximate as nearly as practicable the real service that the men would have in the American Expeditionary Forces in France. Officers who were engaged in this training showed great ingenuity and efficiency in their attempts to make the training approach as nearly as possible what the men would be subjected to in actual service. That they succeeded was shown by the work done by the Marines in France and other places.

The first troops arrived at the Marine Barracks Quantico on 18 May 1917. The maximum enlisted strength was 9,849 on 12 September 1918. The maximum number of officers present at one time was 484 on 16 August 1918. The strength on 11 November 1918 was 329 officers and 8,798 enlisted men. From May 1917 to 11 November 1918, approximately 1,000 officers and 40,000 enlisted men passed through Quantico.

In addition to giving the enlisted men general training at Quantico in preparation for overseas and other duty, the Overseas Depot was established on 19 May 1918 for the dual purpose of organizing and training units of the Marine Corps for service with the American Expeditionary Forces.

Prior to the organization of this depot, the 5th and 6th Regiments, the 6th Machine Gun Battalion, the Base Battalion of the 5th Regiment, and two replacement battalions had left the United States and had become part of the American Expeditionary Force.

The Overseas Depot consisted of an administrative staff and the various sections as follows: (a) The specialists' schools for the technical training of the infantry and machine gun, and the coordination of these specialists' arms; (b) the tactical department for the instruction and training of overseas units in new tactical principles; (c) the enlisted staff school for the training of first sergeants, mess sergeants, cooks, company clerks, armorers, etc. Two French and four Canadian officers, who had abundant experience with the fighting in Europe, were assigned as advisors to the commanding officer.

The basic independent unit of organization was the platoon, and the platoon therefore became the principal training unit. In the organization of this unit, the scheme followed was to assure to each a certain nucleus of enlisted instructors trained in the various specialties, in addition to the platoon commanders, who were qualified to carry on the instruction along approved lines within the unit. This nucleus was taken from the graduates of the specialists' schools of the depot. When four such platoons had been formed, they were assembled into a company. The company headquarters, trained in the enlisted staff school, was added to the four platoons and the company organization was turned over to the company commander complete in all details. Battalions were likewise formed by the consolidation of companies. In every instance the platoon, company, and the battalion carried out a regular schedule of drills and instructions under the supervision of the depot, but all administrative details were left in the hands of the company and the battalion commanders. These training schedules were made up in the tactical department, approved by the commanding officer, and based on the most approved methods in effect at the time. In the cases of the formation of regimental organizations, of which there were two formed during the existence of the Overseas Depot, the battalions were turned over to the regimental commander upon being formed and, in this case, direct supervision by the depot ceased but all facilities on hand, such as material, officers acting in an advisory capacity, training areas, etc., directly attached to the depot were placed at the disposal of the regimental commanders who were at all times in active liaison with the depot.

About 85 percent of the troops forming the detachments arriving at the Overseas Depot for service in France had undergone not less

than 8 [-weeks] or more than 12-weeks training at the regular recruit depots of the Marine Corps. The preliminary training received at these recruit depots was such [that it] fit the men for general service throughout the Marine Corps and resulted in the men being well disciplined, considering the short time they had been in the Service. This facilitated the more advanced and specialized training they were to receive at the Overseas Depot. These detachments were composed entirely of qualified riflemen, having undergone during the recruit period a most thorough and comprehensive course in the use of the rifle. Upon the arrival of these detachments, they were organized as outlined above, and the commissioned personnel were assigned to the units from the officers' school. The schedule and drills and instructions were provided [to] them and were carried out under the supervision of specially selected officers of the tactical department of the Overseas Depot, including the foreign officers. This training continued until the units departed for France. Training in open warfare was given precedence over that of trench warfare from the very beginning in the proportion of about four to one.

The following units were organized by the Overseas Depot: 3d, 4th, 5th, 6th, 9th, 10th, [and] 11th Separate Battalions; 2d and 3d Machine Gun Battalions; 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion; 2d and 3d Separate Machine Gun Battalions; 11th and 13th Regiments; total, approximately, 16,000 officers and enlisted men. The 7th and 8th Separate Battalions were organized and sent to France from Marine Barracks, Parris Island, South Carolina.

The following table shows the schools conducted by the Overseas Depot and the number of graduates:

<b>School</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Non-commissioned officers</b>	<b>Privates</b>	<b>Total</b>
Officers	294			294
Bayonet		360	220	580
Bombing		200	150	350
Gas		180		180
Automatic Rifles		150	650	800
Scout Snipers		75	375	450

Machine Gun	120	145	295	560
Miners and Sappers		70	80	150
Enlisted Staff		105	300	405
<b>Total</b>	<b>414</b>	<b>1,285</b>	<b>2,070</b>	<b>3,769</b>

In addition to the training described above, 69 officers and 2,084 enlisted men, a total of 2,153, graduated from the Marine Corps School of Machine Gun Instruction at Utica, New York.

Never before in the history of the Corps have better drilled and trained or more generally efficient men been turned out, ready for duty, upon completion of their training, and to this factor is largely due the splendid record made by the Marines during the war.

The work of the officers training the Marines was not spectacular, and they wear no war chevrons, nor decorations for bravery, perhaps, but they were, nevertheless, a vital factor in whatever success the Marine Corps met with in the great struggle.

Information [on the] training of enlisted men for aviation will be found in chapter XXI.

### *France*

On 27 June 1917, the 1st Battalion of the 5th Regiment actually landed in France and, on 3 July 1917, the entire 5th Regiment was under canvas on French soil. From that date, every effort was made to train the men and officers. Elements of the 5th Regiment trained as a part of the 1st Division of Regulars from 15 July 1917 to September 1917 in the Gondrecourt Training Area. From September 1917 [and] on, the training of the available units of the 4th Brigade as a unit of the 2d Division of Regulars was conducted in the Bourmont Training Area.

Until February 1918, the training of the Marines in France was handicapped by the fact that units of the brigade were engaged in duties along the line of communications (Services of Supply), one company and a battalion commander being absent in England until March 1918. It was not until the middle of February 1918 that the 4th Brigade (less the company in England) was conducting its training as a brigade with any degree of satisfaction. Owing to the



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Marines receive instruction from French veterans on using hand grenades.

well-trained condition of the individual Marine, this [situation] did not vitally affect his professional ability as was so distinctly shown by his later accomplishments.

The 4th Brigade continued its training in the Bourmont Training Area until the middle of March 1918, when it entered the front line trenches in the Verdun sector.

The Marine replacements received little or no training in a training area in France as most of them were hurried into the fighting immediately upon arrival overseas.

To summarize, the average Marine who arrived in France received at least six-weeks training in the United States in a recruit depot and a very short period at Quantico. This is a contrast to the six-months training received by the average enlisted man of the Army. After arrival in France, the Marines, except those of the original 4th Brigade, received practically no training in a training area since they joined the brigade almost immediately. The Marines comprising the 5th Brigade received no training in a regular training area in France.



# CHAPTER VII

## ORGANIZATIONS AND REPLACEMENTS SENT TO EUROPE

### ORGANIZATION OF THE 4TH AND 5TH BRIGADES

#### *The 4th Brigade*

**T**he 4th Brigade of United States Marines was composed of the 5th and 6th Regiments, and the 6th Machine Gun Battalion.

The companies forming the battalions were as follows:

#### **5th Regiment**

---

1st Battalion	2d Battalion	3d Battalion
17th (A) Company	18th (E) Company	16th (I) Company
49th (B) Company	43d (F) Company	20th (K) Company
66th (C) Company	51st (G) Company	45th (L) Company
67th (D) Company	55th (H) Company	47th (M) Company

8th Machine Gun Company  
Supply Company  
Headquarters Company

#### **6th Regiment**

---

1st Battalion	2d Battalion	3d Battalion
74th (A) Company	78th (E) Company	82d (I) Company
75th (B) Company	79th (F) Company	83d (K) Company

76th (C) Company	80th (G) Company	84th (L) Company
95th (D) Company	96th (H) Company	97th (M) Company
73d Machine Gun Company		
Supply Company		
Headquarters Company		

### 6th Machine Gun Battalion

---

15th (A) Company	77th (C) Company
23d (B) Company	81st (D) Company

From 27 June 1917 to the middle of September 1917, the 5th Regiment was a unit of the 1st Division of Regulars. Although the 5th Regiment was the only organization of Marines in France at the time, the 4th Brigade was formed on 23 October 1917 when Colonel Charles A. Doyen cabled acceptance of his appointment as brigadier general. From 26 October 1917 to 8 August 1919, the 4th Brigade was a part of the 2d Division of Regulars, except [during] 20–23 October 1918, when the brigade was provisionally at the disposal of the 9th French Army Corps, in the vicinity of Leffincourt [Ardennes, northern France]. On 8 August 1919, the brigade was transferred back to the naval service.

On 29 May 1917, in accordance with directions issued by the president, the secretary of the Navy directed the Major General Commandant “to organize a force of Marines to be known as the 5th Regiment of Marines for service with the Army as a part of the first expedition to proceed to France in the near future.” The 5th Regiment was accordingly organized at the Navy Yard, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, on 7 June 1917 with Colonel Charles A. Doyen in command and Major Harry R. Lay as adjutant.

General [John J.] Pershing and his staff, accompanied by two Marine officers, preceded the first expedition to France, sailing late in May 1917 from the United States.

The final report of the American commander in chief includes the following:

The offer by the Navy Department of one regiment of Marines to be reorganized as Infantry was accepted by the Secretary of War, and it became temporarily a part of the First Division.

On 14 June 1917, the first expedition of American troops left the United States for France, and the 5th Regiment embarked on the naval transports *Henderson* and *Hancock*, and the auxiliary cruiser *De Kalb* (former *Printz Eitel Friedrich*), formed approximately one-fifth of it. The fourth group, including the *Hancock*, did not sail until 17 June 1917.

The orders received by the convoy commander on the day prior to sailing read in part: “A military expedition is to be embarked on the above-named transports, augmented by a regiment of Marines embarked in naval vessels, for transportation to a destination already communicated.”

The *De Kalb* was in group one, the *Henderson* in group two, and the *Hancock* in group four; all were part of the escort and not the convoy.

Rear Admiral Albert Gleaves, the convoy commander, flying his flag on the *Seattle*, personally commanded the first group, while Major General [William] L. Sibert [o]n the *Tenedares* was the senior Army officer embarked.

The passage of the four groups across the Atlantic was successfully accomplished without a single disaster or the loss of a life due to enemy causes.

At 2015 [on] 22 June 1917, the first group, including the *De Kalb*, was attacked by enemy submarines. The wake of a submarine was sighted crossing 50 yards ahead of the *Seattle*'s bow from starboard to port. A few seconds later, the *De Kalb* and *Havana* sighted torpedoes and opened fire. Two torpedoes passed close to the *Havana*, and one passed ahead and one astern of the *De Kalb*. The second group encountered two submarines, the first at 1150 [on] 26 June 1918, about 100 miles off the French coast and the second two hours later.

The *De Kalb* arrived at Saint-Nazaire, France, on 26 June 1917, the *Henderson* on 27 June 1917, and the *Hancock* on 2 July 1917. On 27 June 1917, the commanding officer of the 5th Regiment reported to the commanding general, 1st Division, American Expeditionary Forces, and from that date the 5th Regiment was considered as being detached for service with the Army by direction of the president.

Five hundred Negro stevedores had been brought from the United States by the Army to discharge ships, but [their numbers] were

found inadequate for the large number of ships concerned. The Marines relieved the situation somewhat by turning to and discharging their own vessels.

On 27 June 1917, the 1st Battalion, less the 15th Company which joined the battalion the following day, disembarked from the *De Kalb* and occupied quarters ashore. On this date, Lieutenant Colonel Logan Feland joined the 5th Regiment. On 27 June 1917, the 2d and 3d Battalions went ashore from the *Henderson* for a practice march, and the following day the 1st Battalion erected tents for the regiment on a campsite a short distance outside of Saint-Nazaire. By 2000 [on] 3 July 1917, the entire 5th Regiment was ashore under canvas. On 15 July 1917, the 5th Regiment, less the 3d Battalion which remained behind to perform guard duty, and other detached units and officers proceeded to the Gondrecourt Training Area, and were stationed in Menaucourt and Naix.

On 1 August 1917, General Pershing inspected the battalions at the two towns where they were billeted. On 15 August 1917, the 1st Division, including the 5th Regiment, was reviewed by its commanding general on a plateau 12 miles distant from the training area. On 19 August 1917, General Pershing and General [Henri-Philippe] Pétain, commander-in-chief of all the French forces, inspected the Marines, as a unit of the 1st Division. General Pétain congratulated the colonel of the regiment on the splendid appearance of its officers and men, as well as the cleanliness of the towns.

Every opportunity was taken advantage of to perfect the regiment for combat duty, but this work was handicapped by the fact that many units of the regiment were scattered along the line of communications performing duty of a necessary but of a nontraining nature. One company and one battalion commander left the regiment on 22 September 1917 for duty in England, and did not rejoin the regiment until 11 March 1918. Many other officers and men were placed on detached duty.

On 24–25 September 1917, that part of the 5th Regiment available for training arrived in the Bourmont Training Area and was stationed at Damblain and Breuvannes[-en-Bassigny]. The following letter, dated 10 November 1917, addressed by General Pershing to the Major General Commandant is both complimentary and ex-



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo Logan Feland, pictured here as brigadier general, was initially the executive officer of the 5th Regiment. However, when the unit was thrown into the breach to stem the German advance at Château-Thierry, Feland was in the thick of the fighting. At Belleau Wood in June 1918, when the halt in the German advance was turned into a retreat, Feland was given command of all troops in the Wood.

planatory as to why the Marines were used along the line of communications:

Your Marines having been under my command for nearly six months, I feel that I can give you a discriminating report as to their excellent standing with their brothers of the Army and their general good conduct. I take this opportunity, also, of giving you the reasons for distributing them along our line of communications which, besides being a compliment to their high state of discipline and excellent soldierly appearance, was the natural thing to do as the Marine regiment was an additional one in the division and not provided for in the way of transportation and fighting equipment in case the division should be pushed to the front. When, therefore, service of the rear troops and military and provost guards were needed at our base ports and in Paris it was the Marine regiment that had to be scattered, in an endeavor to keep the rest of the organized division intact.

I have been obliged to detach a number of your officers as assistant provost marshals in France and in England, all of which I take it you will agree with me was highly complimentary [sic] to both officers and men, and was so intended. I can assure you that as soon as our service of the rear troops arrive, including a large number of officers and men for the specific duties now being performed by your men, the Marines will be brought back once more under your brigade commander and assigned to the duties which they so much desire in the [2]d Regular Division under General [Omar] Bundy. It is a great pleasure to report on your fine representatives here in France.

Colonel Charles A. Doyen was in command of the 5th Regiment from the date of its organization on 7 June 1917 to 29 October 1917; and Lieutenant Colonel Hiram I. Bearss from 30 October 1917 to 31 December 1917. Colonel Wendell C. Neville, having arrived onboard the *De Kalb* at Saint-Nazaire, France, on 28 December 1917, reported to the 4th Brigade for duty on 1 January 1918, and on that date assumed command of the 5th Regiment, continuing in command until July 1918.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo

LtCol Hiram I. Bearss arrived in France in August 1917 and, until the end of the war, he served in multiple units and commanded battalions, regiments, and brigades. Upon his arrival, Bearss commanded the Base Detachment, 5th Regiment, and then later commanded Base Section No. 2 (Headquarters at Bordeaux), 5th Regiment. Bearss temporarily commanded 3d Battalion, 9th Infantry, before he was detailed to duty at 2d Division Headquarters, then went on to be second in command of the 6th Regiment. As the war drew to a close, he commanded the 102d Infantry Regiment until his final assignment with the 51st Infantry Brigade, 26th Division, through the end of the war.

The 6th Machine Gun Battalion was organized at the Marine Barracks Quantico by order of the Major General Commandant on 17 August 1917. The battalion was designated the 1st Machine Gun Battalion, but on 20 January 1918, after arrival in France, was re-named the 6th Machine Gun Battalion. On 14 December 1917, the battalion sailed from New York on the *De Kalb*, arriving at Saint-Nazaire, France, [on] 28 December 1917. On 3 January 1918, the battalion arrived at Damblain in the Bourmont Training Area and began training with headquarters at Germainvilliers. Major Edward B. Cole was in command of the 6th Machine Gun Battalion from the date of its organization until 10 June 1918, when he received a mortal wound.

On 4 August 1917, in accordance with directions issued by the president, the secretary of the Navy directed the Major General Commandant "to organize a force of Marines, to be known as the 6th Regiment of Marines, for service with the Army in France," and the regiment was organized as directed.

On 23 September 1917, the 1st Battalion of the 6th Regiment sailed on the *Henderson* from New York and landed at Saint-Nazaire, France, on 5 October 1917. On 17 October 1917, the 73d Machine Gun Company, Headquarters and Supply Companies, and Colonel Albertus W. Catlin, commanding officer of the 6th Regiment, with his staff, sailed from Philadelphia, on the *De Kalb* and from New York on 18 October 1917, arriving at Saint-Nazaire, France, on 1 November 1917. On 31 October 1917, the 3d Battalion of the 6th Regiment sailed from New York onboard the *Von Steuben* and anchored at Brest, France, on 12 November 1917. On 24 January 1918, the 2d Battalion of the 6th Regiment sailed on the *Henderson* from New York and arrived at Saint-Nazaire, France, on 6 February 1918, and with the arrival of this last battalion, the entire 6th Regiment was in France.

On 23 October 1917, the 4th Brigade was organized, with [now] Brigadier General Charles A. Doyen in command. Brigadier General Doyen continued in command until 7 May 1918, when he published in General Orders No. 5, that he had relinquished command. Major Harry R. Lay was the first brigade adjutant and performed the duties of that office from 24 October 1917 to 9 August 1918,



except during the period [from] 7 February to 9 May 1918, when Major Holland M. Smith was brigade adjutant.

On 26 October 1917, Brigadier General Charles A. Doyen, United States Marine Corps, assumed command of the 2d Division as its first commanding general and announced his staff in General Orders No. 1, with station at Bourmont, Haute-Marne, serving as such until relieved by Major General Omar Bundy, United States Army, who announced that he assumed command in General Orders No. 4 [on] 8 November 1917.

Like the 5th Regiment, the 6th Regiment spent several months performing the necessary but undesired duties along the line of communications. On 12 January 1918, Colonel Albertus W. Catlin established headquarters for the 6th Regiment at Blevaincourt in the Bourmont Training Area. The 3d Battalion arrived in this area on 12 January 1918, the headquarters units the same date, the 1st Battalion during January 1918, and the 2d Battalion on 10 February 1918.

Therefore, on 10 February 1918, the 4th Brigade was in the Bourmont Training Area intact, with the exception of one company on duty in England, training industriously as an infantry brigade of the 2d Division. While the brigade had been organized on 23 October 1917, and had actually functioned as a brigade with elements of all three of its units present from 12 January 1918, it was not until 10 February 1918 that the brigade organization was perfected.

### *The 5th Brigade*

On 5 September 1918, the Major General Commandant directed the post commander [at] Marine Barracks Quantico to organize brigade headquarters of the 5th Brigade, United States Marine Corps. This brigade was accordingly organized and was composed of the 11th and 13th Regiments and the 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion. The companies of the 5th Brigade were designated by letters and not by numbers.

Brigadier General Eli K. Cole was designated as the brigade commander and, on 15 September 1918, he and the brigade staff sailed from Hoboken, New Jersey, onboard the [USS] *Von Steuben* [ID 3017], arriving at Brest, France, on 24 September 1918.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Eli K. Cole, pictured here as brigadier general, commanded Marine training recruits for war when he was assigned to Parris Island, South Carolina. He remained there until 1 September 1918, when he transferred to head the 5th Brigade for duty in France. Since his brigade was broken up to guard various depots and stations for Services of Supply, he was first assigned additional duty as an observer with the 2d Division and later detailed to command the 41st Division (1st Depot Division), U.S. Army. Subsequently, he headed the 1st Replacement Depot, American Expeditionary Forces, and the American Embarkation Center at Le Mans in addition to his duties as commanding general of the far-flung 5th Brigade.

The 13th Regiment left the Overseas Depot at Quantico on Friday 13 September 1918, and on 15 September 1918, sailed from Hoboken, New Jersey, onboard the *Henderson* and *Von Steuben*, arriving at Brest, France, on 25 September 1918.

On 29 September 1918, 11th Regiment Headquarters and the 1st Battalion sailed on the *De Kalb* from Philadelphia and arrived at Brest, France, on 13 October 1918. On 16 October 1918, the 2d and 3d Battalions of the 11th Regiment sailed from Brooklyn, New York, onboard the [USS] *Agamemnon* [ID 3004] and *Von Steuben* and arrived at Brest, France, on 25 October 1918.

On 28 October 1918, the 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion sailed from south Brooklyn, onboard the *Henderson* and arrived at Brest, France, on 9 November 1918. With the arrival of this unit, the entire 5th Brigade was in France.

### *Aviation Units*

On 21 January 1918, the 1st Marine Aeronautic Company arrived at Naval Base 13, Ponta Delgada, Azores. On 30 July 1918, the 1st Marine Aviation Force (less Squadron D) disembarked at Brest, France, and formed the Day Wing of the Northern Bombing Group. Squadron D joined the Day Wing in October 1918.

### *Marine Detachments for Naval Bases*

On 21 January 1918 and on 20 July 1918, detachments for Naval Base 13 arrived at Ponta Delgada, Azores. On 30 September 1918, the detachment for Naval Base 29 arrived at Cardiff, Wales. On 29 December 1918, the detachment for the naval forces in France, staff office, Paris, France, landed at Saint-Nazaire, France.

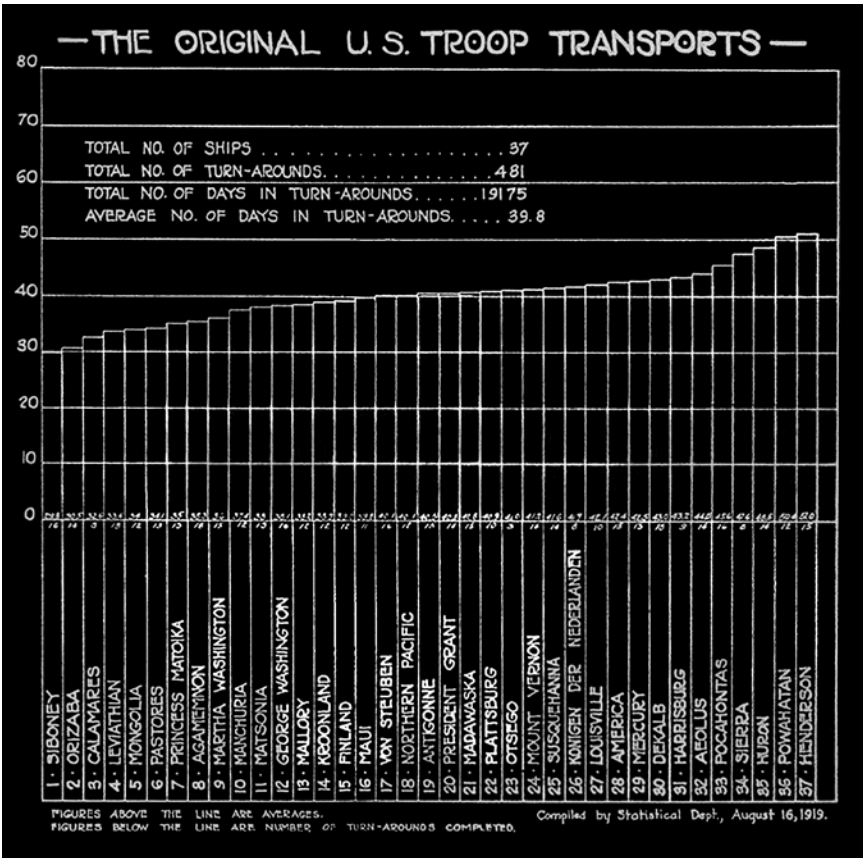
*Replacements for American Expeditionary Forces*

The following table will show the names of the replacement organizations sent to the American Expeditionary Forces, dates of sailing and arrival, and names of vessels:

<b>Name of organization</b>	<b>Date of embarkation</b>	<b>Date of debarkation</b>	<b>Vessel</b>
5th Regiment Base Detachment	31 July 1917	22 August 1917	<i>Henderson</i>
12th and 26th Companies (disbanded in France)	8 December 1917	31 December 1917	<i>De Kalb</i>
1st Replacement Battalion	5 February 1918	25 February 1918	<i>Von Steuben</i>
2d Replacement Battalion	14 March 1918	27 March 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
3d Replacement Battalion	22 April 1918	__ May 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
Casual Company	22 April 1918	__ May 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
1st Machine Gun Replacement Battalion	26 May 1918	8 June 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
1st Casual Replacement Battalion	26 May 1918	8 June 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
2d Casual Replacement Battalion	30 June 1918	9 July 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
3d Separate Battalion	13 August 1918	26 August 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
4th Separate Battalion	13 August 1918	26 August 1918	<i>Henderson</i>
5th Separate Battalion	17 August 1918	27 August 1918	<i>Von Steuben</i>
6th Separate Battalion	17 August 1918	27 August 1918	<i>Von Steuben</i>
1st Separate Machine Gun Battalion	21 August 1918	2 September 1918	<i>De Kalb</i>

7th Separate Battalion	20 October 1918	3 November 1918	<i>Pocahontas</i>
8th Separate Battalion	20 October 1918	3 November 1918	<i>Pocahontas</i>
9th Separate Battalion	27 October 1918	9 November 1918	<i>Henderson</i>

In addition to the above, the 12th Replacement Battalion sailed from the United States onboard the *Hancock* in June 1919, arrived in France in June 1919, and joined the American Expeditionary Forces.



Courtesy of Naval History and Heritage Command  
 This graph shows the number of American transport ships that crisscrossed the Atlantic Ocean in support of the war effort.

*Number of Marines Sailing from the United States to Europe for Duty with the American Expeditionary Forces and for Shore Duty with the Naval Service*

There were 834 officers, not including observers, and 30,481 enlisted men, or a total of 31,315 Marines, sent overseas for shore duty with the American Expeditionary Forces and naval service. The following tables give details:

**For duty with the American Expeditionary Forces**

<b>Month of departure</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Enlisted</b>	<b>Total</b>
May 1917	2*		2
June 1917	70	2,689	2,759
July 1917	29	1,054	1,083
September 1917	27	1,045	1,072
October 1917	45	1,536	1,581
December 1917	23	637	660
January 1918	31	1,031	1,062
February 1918	24	1,041	1,065
March 1918	23	1,034	1,057
April 1918	22	1,284	1,306
May 1918	24	1,565	1,589
June 1918	6	751	757
August 1918	32	4,362	4,394
September 1918	172	5,275	5,447
October 1918	132	5,809	5,941
<b>Total</b>	<b>662</b>	<b>29,113</b>	<b>29,775</b>

\*Accompanied Gen Pershing.

Sixty officers of the medical corps, 12 officers of the dental corps, 500 enlisted men of the medical corps, and 11 chaplains of the Navy, not included in the above figures, were sent to France and served with the Marines in the American Expeditionary Forces.

In addition to the above, the 12th Replacement Battalion, consisting of 9 officers and 500 enlisted men, joined the American Expeditionary Forces in June 1919.

**For duty with naval service ashore**

<b>Month of departure</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Enlisted</b>	<b>Total</b>
December 1917	2	59	61
January 1918	13	172	185
June 1918	2	75	77
July 1918	107	654	761
August 1918	4	120	124
September 1918	44	288	332
<b>Total</b>	<b>172</b>	<b>1,368</b>	<b>1,540</b>

## CHAPTER VIII

### OPERATIONS IN GENERAL

**W**hile the battle operations of the 4th Brigade as an infantry brigade of the 2d Division of Regulars overshadowed all others taken part in by Marine Corps personnel, those operations were by no means the only ones participated in by officers and men of the Marine Corps.

The commanding general of the 2d Division, from early in August 1918 to the date of demobilization, and several officers on his staff were Marine officers. Officers of the Marine Corps were at various times attached to the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, 6th, 26th, 32d, 35th, 19th, and 92d Divisions, and in some cases engaged in operations with them. Brigadier General John A. Lejeune assumed command of the 64th Infantry Brigade of the 32d Division, then on the front line on the Swiss border in the Suarce sector, on 5 July 1918. He was in command of this brigade on 22 July 1918, when it was withdrawn from the above-mentioned sector and continued in command until 25 July 1918, when he left to command the 4th Brigade. Between 5–22 July 1918, Brigadier General Lejeune, in addition to the 64th Brigade, commanded three French infantry regiments. Colonel Robert H. Dunlap was in command of the 17th Field Artillery Regiment of the 2d Field Artillery Brigade, 2d Division, from 20 October 1918 to February 1919. Colonel Hiram I. Bearss commanded the 102d Regiment of the 51st Infantry Brigade, 26th Division, in the Saint-Mihiel offensive. Colonel Frederick M. Wise commanded the 59th Regiment of the 8th Infantry Brigade, 4th Division, from 5 Septem-





Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
LtCol Frederick M. Wise was ordered to duty with the AEF in France in June 1917. By 1 April 1918, he was occupying a sector of front line trenches in command of the 2d Battalion, 5th Regiment. During June, he assisted in stopping the enemy drive on Paris, and then participated in the offensive at Bois de Belleau. In August 1918, Wise was ordered to report to the commander and chief of the 4th Division to assume command the 59th Infantry and took an active part in the Saint-Mihiel offensive and then marched the unit into Germany to participate in the occupation. Wise later commanded the 8th Brigade of the 4th Division.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Marines of the 3d Brigade stationed at Fort Crockett on Galveston Island, Texas,  
demonstrate their skills with semaphore by spelling out "Marines" with flags.

ber 1918 to 4 January 1919, during which [time] he participated in the Saint-Mihiel and Meuse-Argonne major operations. From 1 January 1919 to 9 February 1919, Colonel Wise commanded the 8th Infantry Brigade of the 4th Division.

A few Marine officers and enlisted men engaged in Army aviation operations and suffered casualties. About 20 Marine officers were sent to France as observers and as such participated in operations with American, French, and British forces. Marine aviation personnel served in France as the Day Wing of the Northern Bombing Group of the Navy. Marine flyers served with [the] 217 and 218 [Squadrons] (bombing squadrons); Royal Air Force of England; and with pursuit, observation, and bombing squadrons of the French Flying Corps. Quite a few casualties were suffered by the Marine aviation personnel.

The 1st Marine Aeronautic Company, Naval Base 13, Ponta Delgada, Azores, equipped for water flying only, performed patrol duty from January 1918 until 11 November 1918.



The Marine Aviation Section, Naval Air Station Miami, Florida, performed arduous patrol duties in the Florida Straits in connection with the Navy from July 1918 until the date the armistice went into effect.

Marine detachments served onboard all the American battleships attached to the British Grand Fleet and also on the American battleships based at Castletown Berehaven [and] Bantry Bay, Ireland. Marines also served onboard many of the cruisers that escorted the vessels transporting Army troops to Europe. They were also attached to many other naval vessels, such as the *Brooklyn*, *Helena*, and *Wilmington*, in Chinese and Siberian waters, at one time landing at Vladivostok [Russia] in conjunction with other naval forces; on the *Galveston* on the Murman Coast [Russia]; and on the *Pittsburgh* in South American waters. Marines were also on the *San Diego* when that vessel was sunk and [on] the *Minnesota* when that ship was damaged by German mines. Marines were in intimate contact with the Germans in Guam and Philadelphia in conjunction with the Navy in the first hours of the war.

One brigade of Marines was held in readiness in Texas for possible trouble in Mexico that might endanger the Allies' oil supply.

Another was scattered throughout the island of Cuba. Large detachments of Marines were stationed in the Azores and Virgin Islands in the nature of advanced base forces, while an advanced base force at Philadelphia was available at all times for naval needs. Marine forces were also stationed in Guam, Philippine Islands, Peking, Pearl Harbor, and Nicaragua and they assisted materially, under the limited conditions, in the war.

Active operations were conducted in Haiti and Santo Domingo against bandits during the period of the war by Marine forces, the Haitian Gendarmerie and the Guardia Nacional Dominicana, the two latter organizations being composed of natives and administered and officered by the Marine and Navy personnel. Casualties were suffered by Marines in the operations in Santo Domingo—4 Marines killed, 13 wounded, and 1 officer wounded—between 6 April 1917 and 11 November 1918.

## CHAPTER IX

### UNITS COMPOSING, AND THE COMMANDING GENERALS OF, THE 2D DIVISION- VERDUN OPERATIONS

#### *The 2d Division of Regulars*

**T**he first unit that ultimately formed a part of the 2d Division arriving in France was the 5th Regiment, which landed in France with the first expedition of American troops in June 1917. One Marine lieutenant colonel, who afterward was the first chief of staff of the 2d Division, and another Marine lieutenant colonel, who later commanded the 17th Field Artillery of the 2d Division, accompanied General Pershing and his staff when they sailed from the United States late in May 1917.

The 2d Division was composed of the following units:

3d Infantry Brigade:

9th Infantry

23d Infantry

5th Machine Gun Battalion

4th Infantry Brigade:

5th Regiment

6th Regiment

6th Machine Gun Battalion

2d Field Artillery Brigade:

12th Field Artillery

15th Field Artillery

17th Field Artillery

2d Trench Mortar Battery

Other troops:

2d Engineers

4th Machine Gun Battalion

1st Field Signal Battalion

2d Headquarters Train and Military Police

2d Ammunition Train

2d Engineer Train

2d Supply Train

2d Sanitary Train

On 26 October 1917, Brigadier General Charles A. Doyen, United States Marine Corps, assumed command of the 2d Division as its first commanding general and announced his staff in General Orders No. 1, with station at Bourmont, Haute-Marne, France. Lieutenant Colonel Logan Feland, United States Marine Corps, was the first chief of staff. On 8 November 1917, Major General Omar Bundy, United States Army, assumed command, published such fact in General Orders No. 4 [on] 8 November 1917, and was in command of it during the operations in the Verdun and Château-Thierry sectors. Major General James G. Harbord, United States Army, commanded the division in the Aisne-Marne (Soissons) offensive in July 1918. Major General John A. Lejeune assumed command of the division on 28 July 1918, and retained command until its demobilization in August 1919. Many Marine officers occupied positions of importance and responsibility on the staff of the commanding general, 2d Division. A Marine officer commanded the 17th Field Artillery during the Meuse-Argonne offensive, and other Marine officers commanded battalions of the 9th Infantry and 15th Field Artillery for a time.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo Charles A. Doyen, pictured here as brigadier general was ordered to command the 5th Regiment in June 1917 for service with the U.S. Army in France. He was promoted to brigadier general in October 1917 and was quickly reassigned to 4th Marine Brigade, 2d Division. On 7 May 1918, having been found physically incapacitated for active service, Gen Doyen was relieved of duty and ordered back to the United States.

Neither the Marine brigade nor any other element of the 2d Division was the first American unit to enter the front lines since the 1st Division enjoyed that honor in October 1917, when it entered the line in the quiet Toul sector.

The 4th Brigade remained in the Bourmont Training Area, with headquarters at Damblain, until 14 March 1918, when it commenced movement into subsectors of the Verdun front, the first units of the brigade entering the front line during the night of 16–17 March 1918, with headquarters at Toulon. On 1 April 1918, brigade headquarters was changed to Moscou. The brigade remained on the Verdun front until 14 May 1918, when it proceeded to an area around Vitry-le-François for open warfare training, with headquarters at Vanault-les-Dames. In the meantime, on 6 May 1918, Brigadier General James G. Harbord assumed command of the brigade, relieving Brigadier General Doyen who had been ordered to the United States on account of his physical condition. Brigadier General Doyen relinquished command of the brigade most unwillingly, and the reasons for his relief are best set forth in the words of the citation of a Navy Distinguished Service Medal posthumously awarded to him, reading as follows:

By reason of his abilities and personal efforts, he brought this brigade to the very high state of efficiency which enabled it to successfully resist the German Army in the Château-Thierry sector and Belleau Woods. The strong efforts on his part for nearly a year undermined his health and necessitated his being invalided to the United States before having the opportunity to command the brigade in action, but his work was shown by the excellent service rendered by the brigade, not only at Belleau Woods, but during the entire campaign when they fought many battles.

General Pershing, in a letter to Brigadier General Doyen, stated in part:

Your service has been satisfactory and your command is considered as one of the best in France. I have nothing but praise for the service which you have rendered in this command.





Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
U.S. Army officer James G. Harbord was serving as Gen John J. Pershing's chief of staff when, in May 1918, he was assigned to command the 4th Brigade, 2d Division. Under his command, the unit helped make Château-Thierry and Belleau Wood household names in the United States. On 26 June 1918, Harbord was promoted to major general and, upon acceptance of that commission on 11 July, he was assigned to command the 2d Division.

On 14 May 1918, the brigade left the area around Vitry-le-François as it was unsuitable and proceeded to an area around Gisors-Chaumont-en-Vexin, with headquarters at Bou-des-Bois. The brigade was in this area when sudden orders came to move to the Château-Thierry sector. On 27 May 1918, Brigadier General John A. Lejeune and Major Earl H. Ellis sailed from New York onboard the *Henderson* and arrived at Brest, France, on 8 June 1918.

## CHAPTER X

### AISNE DEFENSIVE, HILL 142, BOURSCHES, AND BOIS DE LA BRIGADE DE MARINE IN THE CHÂTEAU-THIERRY SECTOR

**I**n order to appreciate the importance of the early operations participated in by the Marine brigade as a unit of the 2d Division, it is necessary to remember that in 1918, prior to the middle of July, the offensive was in the hands of the Imperial German Staff, and that between 21 March 1918 and 15 July 1918, the Germans directed no less than five major offensives against the Allied lines in efforts to bring the war to a successful conclusion for the Central Powers. American troops assisted in breaking up every one of these drives, but the 2d Division, including the Marines, opposed only one, that in the Château-Thierry sector. It should also be noted that, on 28 March 1918, the American commander in chief placed all of the American forces at the disposal of Marshal [Ferdinand] Foch [of France], who had been agreed upon as commander in chief of the Allied Armies, to be used as he might decide.

The first offensive (Somme) of the Germans was stopped within a few miles of Amiens, and the second (Lys) overran Armentières. In this second German offensive, which lasted from 9 to 27 April 1918, and which has been designated by the Americans as a major operation, there were approximately 500 American troops engaged.

Then late in May 1918, with startling success, which brought a corresponding depression to the morale of the Allies, the Germans launched their third offensive, west of Rheims, crossed the Chemin

des Dames, captured Soissons, and the last day of May found them marching in the direction of Paris down the Marne Valley. Again the American commander in chief placed every available man at the disposal of Marshal Foch. It was at this critical time, when the Allies were facing a grave crisis, that the 2d Division, including the Marine brigade, together with elements of the 3d and 28th Divisions, were thrown into the line and, in blocking the German advance in the Château-Thierry sector, rendered great assistance in stopping the most dangerous of the German drives.

The first report of the American commander in chief states that “the 3d Division, which had just come from its preliminary training area, was hurried to the Marne. Its motorized machine-gun battalion preceded the other units and successfully held the bridgehead at the Marne opposite Château-Thierry. The 2d Division, in reserve near Montdidier, was sent by motor trucks and other available transport to check the progress of the enemy toward Paris.”

The final report of the American commander in chief with reference to this third German offensive stated in part:

On reaching the Marne that river was used as a defensive flank and the German advance was directed toward Paris. During the first days of June something akin to a panic seized the city and it was estimated that 1,000,000 people left during the spring of 1918.

The Second Division, then in reserve northwest of Paris and preparing to relieve the First Division, was hastily diverted to the vicinity of Meaux on May 31, and, early on the morning of June 1, was deployed across the Château-Thierry-Paris road near Montreuil-aux-Lions in a gap in the French line, where it stopped the German advance on Paris.

Without minimizing in any way the splendid actions of the 26th Division at Seicheprey and Xivray[-et-Marvoisin] in April 1918, or the brilliant exploits of the 1st Division at Cantigny on 28 May 1918, the fact remains that the 2d Division, including the Marine brigade, was the first American division to get a chance to play an important part on the western front, and how well it repelled this dangerous thrust of the Germans along the Paris-Metz highway is too well known to be dwelt upon at length in this brief history.

The fighting of the 2d Division in the Château-Thierry sector was divided into two parts; one a magnificently stubborn defensive lasting a week and the other a vicious offensive. The defensive fighting of the 2d Division between 31 May and 5 June 1918 was part of the major operation called by the Americans the Aisne defensive. Without discussing at this time the tactical or strategic significance of the work of the 2d Division in the Aisne defensive, suffice to say that its psychological effect upon the morale of the Allies was tremendous and has been recognized in practically every writing worthy of consideration up to the present date.

The close of the Aisne defensive on 5 June 1918 found the line of the 2d Division well established at that point of the Marne salient nearest Paris, but not including Hill 142, Bois de Belleau, Bouresches, or Vaux, and the Germans were in possession of Château-Thierry on the right of the 2d Division and continued to hold that town until about 17 July 1918.

On 6 June 1918, the 2d Division snatched the initiative from the Germans and started an offensive on its front that did not end until 1 July 1918. The Marine brigade captured Hill 142 and Bouresches on 6 June 1918 and, in the words of General Pershing, "sturdily held its ground against the enemy's best guard divisions," and completely cleared Bois de Belleau of the enemy on 26 June 1918, [as best described by] a major of Marines sending in his famous message: "Woods now U.S. Marine Corps' entirely." The American commander in chief in his first report calls this fighting "the battle of Belleau Wood" and states, "our men proved their superiority, and gained a strong tactical position with far greater loss to the enemy than to ourselves." In his final reports, he states: "The enemy having been halted, the Second Division commenced a series of vigorous attacks on June 4, which resulted in the capture of Belleau Woods [on 26 June] after very severe fighting. The village of Bouresches was taken soon after [on 6 June] and on July 1 Vaux was captured. In these operations, the 2d Division met with most desperate resistance by Germany's best troops." On 1 July 1918, the 3d Brigade captured Vaux. The artillery, engineers, and the other elements of the 2d Division assisted materially in these successes, while the 7th Regiment

of the 3d Division was in Belleau Wood for a few days about the middle of June.

During these 31 days of constant fighting, the last 26 of which has been defined by general headquarters of the American Expeditionary Forces as a "local engagement," the 2d Division suffered 1,811 battle deaths (of which approximately 1,062 were Marines) and suffered additional casualties amounting to 7,252 (of which approximately 3,615 were Marines). It was that fighting and those 9,063 casualties that first made the name Château-Thierry famous.

The achievements of the 4th Brigade in the Château-Thierry sector were twice recognized by the French. The first, which changed the name of the Bois de Belleau, was a beautiful tribute spontaneously made to the successes and to the losses of the 4th Brigade, and shows the deep effect that the retaking of Belleau Wood and other nearby positions from the Germans had on the feelings of the French and the morale of the Allies. Official maps were immediately modified to conform to the provisions of the order, the *plan directeur* used in later operations bearing the name "Bois de la Brigade de Marine." The French also used this new name in their orders, as illustrated by an *ordre général* dated 9 August 1918, signed by the commanding general of the 6th French Army, reading in part as follows:

*Avant la grande offensive du 18 Juillet, les troupes américaines faisant partie de la VIe Armée française se sont distinguées en enlevant à l'ennemi le Bois de la Brigade De Marine et le village de Vaux, en arrêtant son offensive sur la Marine et à Fossoy.*

The order changing the name of Bois de Belleau reads as follows:

VI° ARMEE, ETAT-MAJOR,  
au Q. G. A., le 30 Juin 1918

6930/2.]

ORDRE

*En raison de la brillante conduite de la 4<sup>ème</sup> Brigade de la 2<sup>ème</sup> D. U. S. qui a enlevé de haute lutte Boursches et le point d'appui important du Bois de Belleau, défendu avec acharnement par un adversaire nombreux, le général commandant la VI<sup>ème</sup> Armée décide que dorénavant, dans toutes les pièces officielles, le Bois de Belleau portera le nom de "Bois de la Brigade de Marine."*

*Le Général de Division Degoutte,  
Commandant la VI<sup>ème</sup> Armée  
(Signed) DEGOUTTE*

A. M. le GÉNÉRAL CDT. la 4<sup>ME</sup> BRIGADE de MARINE  
s/c. de M. le Général Cdt. la 2<sup>me</sup> D. U. S.

The second recognition by the French of the Marines' work in the Château-Thierry sector were citations of the 4th Brigade, 5th and 6th Regiments, and the 6th Machine Gun Battalion, in French Army orders, that of the brigade, the others being identical, reading as follows:

*Après approbation du général commandant en chef les forces expéditionnaires américaines en France, le général commandant en chef les armées françaises du nord et du nord-est, cite à l'Ordre de l'Armée:*

*"4<sup>°</sup> Brigade Americaine sous les ordres du Général de Brigade James G. Harbord, comprenant: Le 5<sup>e</sup> Régiment de Marine, sous les ordres du Colonel Wendell C. Neville, le 6<sup>e</sup> régiment de Marine, sous les ordres du Colonel Albertus W. Catlin, le 6<sup>e</sup> Bataillon de mitrailleuses, sous les ordres du Commandant Edward B. Cole:*

*"A été jetée en pleine bataille, sur un front violemment attaqué par l'ennemi. S'est affirmée aussitôt comme une unité de tout premier order. Dès son entrée en ligne, a brisé, en liaison avec les troupes françaises, une violente attaque ennemie sur un*

*point important de la position et entrepris ensuite à son compte une série d'opérations offensives. Au cours de ces opérations, grace au courage brillant, à la vigueur, à l'allant, à la ténacité de ses hommes qui ne se sont laissés rebuter ni par les fatigues, ni par les pertes; grace à l'activité et à l'énergie de ses officiers; grace enfin à l'action personnelle de son chef, le Général I. Harbord, la 4e brigade a vu ses efforts couronnés de succès. En intime liaison l'un avec l'autre, ses deux régiments et son bataillon de mitrailleurs ont réalisé, après douze jours de lutte incessante (du 2 au 13 Juin 1918) dans un terrain très difficile, une progression variant entre 1,500 à 2,000 metres, sur un front de 4 kilomètres, capturant un nombreux matériel, faisant plus de 500 prisonniers, infligeant à l'ennemi des pertes considérables et lui enlevant deux points d'appui de première importance—le village de Bouresches et le bois organisé de Belleau.”*

*Au Grand Quartier Général, le 22 octobre 1918*

*Le Général Commandant en Chef*

*Signé: PETAIN*

(Ordre No. 10.805 “D.”)

In addition to the above-described instances, French civilian sentiment expressed itself in the following letter from the mayor of Meaux and [a] resolution from the assembled mayors of the Meaux District (Arrondissement). This letter and the resolutions were published on 10 July 1918 in General Orders No. 43 of the 2d Division “as indicating the appreciation of the efforts of the Second Division by the French inhabitants for our share in stemming the recent German advance in this sector.”

MEAUX, June 26, 1918

GENERAL: On behalf of all the Mayors of the Meaux District (Arrondissement), assembled yesterday in congress at the city hail, I have the honor to send you herewith a copy of the resolution they have taken in order to pay homage to the gallantry displayed by the troops under your command and to the effectiveness of the help they rendered us.

The civilian population of this part of the country will never forget that the beginning of this month of June, when their





Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a lieutenant, Edward B. Cole was among the first contingent of Marines sent to France. Known for his heroism and bravery during the battle of Belleau Wood, Cole was recognized in a communiqué from France, “in the Bois de Belleau on 10 June 1918, displayed extraordinary heroism in organizing positions, rallying his men, and disposing of his guns, continuing to expose himself fearlessly until he fell . . .” He lost his right hand and received additional wounds in the upper arm and both thighs that caused his death eight days later on 18 June 1918.

homes were threatened by the invader, the Second American Division victoriously stepped forth and succeeded in saving them from impending danger.

I am personally happy to be able to convey to you this modest token of their thankfulness and I am, General,

Yours, respectfully,

(Signed) G. LUGOL,

Mayor of Meaux, Depute de Seine et Marne.

Voted in a Congress of the Mayors of Meaux District on the 25th of June 1918

The mayors of the Meaux district, who were eyewitnesses to the generous and efficacious deeds of the American Army in stopping the enemy advance, send to this Army the heartfelt expression of their admiration and gratefulness.

(Signed) G. LUGOL,

President of the Committee

MEAUX, June 25, 1918

During the first attack on Belleau Wood on 6 June 1918, Colonel Albertus W. Catlin was severely wounded and was relieved in command of the 6th Regiment by Lieutenant Colonel Harry Lee, who continued in command until the regiment was demobilized in August 1919.

When Major Edward B. Cole was mortally wounded on 10 June 1918, he was relieved in command of the 6th Machine Gun Battalion by Captain Harlan E. Major. On 11 June 1918, Captain Major was relieved by Captain George H. Osterhout, who retained command until relieved by Major Littleton W. T. Waller Jr. on 21 June 1918.

During the fighting in the Château-Thierry sector, the headquarters of the 4th Brigade was successively at Montreuil-aux-Lions, (in an automobile for one-half hour on the way to the front lines), Is-songe farmhouse, and La Loge farmhouse. After being relieved by elements of the 26th Division during the night of 5–6 July 1918, the brigade moved to an area in rear of the lines and occupied what was known as the line of defense or Army line, with headquarters at Nanteuil-sur-Marne. The brigade remained there until 16 July 1918.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo

Pictured here as a brigadier general, Albertus W. Catlin was in charge of the Marine training camp at Quantico, Virginia, when war broke out. In October 1917, he was sent to France as commanding officer of the 6th Regiment. Catlin's regiment saw action on the front lines from the Paris-Metz highway through Lucy-le-Bocage to Hill 142. On 6 June 1918, with his regiment attacking Bois de Belleau, he was wounded in the chest by a sniper. His citation states that Catlin was thrown into the thick of battle "on a front then under violent enemy attack." It adds: "Commanded his regiment with precision and judgment, which bore fruit in the operation up to 6 June 1918, inclusive; then in directing in Belleau Wood, where he was wounded by a bullet which went through his shoulder and lung."



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a brigadier general, Harry Lee joined Marine Barracks Quantico for duty with the 6th Regiment in August 1917, arriving with it in France in February 1918. He participated in battles in the Château-Thierry sector as second in command of the 6th Regiment until 6 June, when he took command of the regiment after Col Catlin was wounded in action. Under his command, the regiment participated with distinction in the Aisne-Marne offensive (Soissons), the Marbache sector, the Saint-Mihiel offensive, Blanc-Mont Ridge, the Champagne sector, the Meuse-Argonne offensive (Argonne Forest), and in the march of the Allies to the Rhine.

During the time the above-described, fighting was going on, the Germans were frustrated in their fourth 1918 drive (Noyon-Montdidier defensive) between 9 and 15 June 1918, and of course being busy in the vicinity of Bois de Belleau, the Marines had no opportunity [to] engag[e] in it.

Having been blocked in the Marne salient, the Germans attacked for the fifth time in 1918 on 15 July and as events turned out it was the last, for from the time of its failure they were on the defensive. The Allied troops including many Americans held this attack, called by the Americans the Champagne-Marne defensive, which was on a large scale, and the grand initiative passed from the Germans to the Allies on 18 July 1918, when Marshal Foch launched his initial major offensive, termed by the Americans the Aisne-Marne. In this magnificent and gigantic operation, the Marine brigade and other elements of the 2d Division played leading parts in the vicinity of Soissons. General headquarters, American Expeditionary Forces, on 28 May 1919, credited the 2d Division units with participation in the major operation of Champagne-Marne defensive, but on 2 June 1919 rescinded this credit.

## CHAPTER XI

### THE AISNE-MARNE OFFENSIVE (SOISSONS)

On 11 July 1918, Brigadier General James G. Harbord, commanding general of the Marine brigade, received notification of his appointment as a major general, and two days later left on five days' leave of absence. As Colonel Neville had been evacuated to a base hospital after leaving the Château-Thierry sector, Lieutenant Colonel Harry Lee assumed temporary command of the brigade. Major General Harbord and Colonel Neville both returned in time to enter the Aisne-Marne offensive, the former in command of the 2d Division and the latter in command of the 4th Brigade.

Of the six Allied offensives taking place in 1918 on the western front, designated by the Americans as major operations, the 4th Brigade, with the other units of the 2d Division, participated in three, the first being the vast offensive known as the Aisne-Marne, in which the Marine brigade entered the line near Soissons.

On 17 July 1918, the 1st Moroccan Division and the 1st and 2d Divisions of American Regulars were hurriedly and secretly concentrated by terribly fatiguing forced night marches over roads jammed with troops, artillery, and tanks, through rain and mud in the Bois de Retz near Soissons. Headquarters of the 4th Brigade was established at Vivieres. The getting to the "jump-off" on time for this operation will always share in Marine Corps history with the glorious victory that followed.

Early on the morning of 18 July 1918, Marshal Foch threw these three picked divisions at the unsuspecting Germans with over-

whelming success, and again on the following day. The American commander in chief in his first report stated:

The place of honor in the thrust toward Soissons on July 18 was given to our First and Second Divisions in company with chosen French divisions. Without the usual brief warning of a preliminary bombardment, the massed French and American artillery, firing by the map, laid down its rolling barrage at dawn while the infantry began its charge. The tactical handling of our troops under these trying conditions was excellent throughout the action. \* \* \* The Second Division took Beaurepaire Farm and Vierzy in a very rapid advance, and reached a position in front of Tigny at the end of its second day.

In his final report, he stated:

General Pétain's initial plan for the counterattack involved the entire western face of the Marne salient. The First and Second American Divisions, with the First French Moroccan Division between them, were employed as the spearhead of the main attack, driving directly eastward, through the most sensitive portion of the German lines to the heights south of Soissons. The advance began on July 18, without the usual brief warning of a preliminary bombardment, and these three divisions at a single bound broke through the enemy's infantry defenses and overran his artillery, cutting or interrupting the German communications leading into the salient. A general withdrawal from the Marne was immediately begun by the enemy, who still fought stubbornly to prevent disaster.

The Second Division advanced 8 kilometers in the first 26 hours and, by the end of the second day, was facing Tigny, having captured 3,000 prisoners and 66 field guns. It was relieved the night of the 19th by a French division. The result of this counteroffensive was of decisive importance. Due to the magnificent dash and power displayed on the field of Soissons by our First and Second Divisions, the tide of war was definitely turned in favor of the Allies.

Major General James G. Harbord, commanding the 2d Division in this operation, describes the two days' fighting of his division in these words:

It is with keen pride that the division commander transmits to the command the congratulations and affectionate personal greetings of General Pershing, who visited the division headquarters last night. His praise of the gallant work of the division on the 18th and 19th is echoed by the French high command, the Third Corps commander, American Expeditionary Forces, and in a telegram from the former division commander. In spite of two sleepless nights, long marches through rain and mud, and the discomforts of hunger and thirst, the division attacked side by side with the gallant First Moroccan Division and maintained itself with credit. You advanced over 6 miles, captured over 3,000 prisoners, 11 batteries of artillery, over 100 machine guns, minnenwerfers [mine launchers], and supplies. The Second Division has sustained the best traditions of the Regular Army and the Marine Corps. The story of your achievements will be told in millions of homes in all Allied lands tonight.

This was one of the greatest strategic successes of Marshal Foch and that, the part played by the Marines was appreciated by the French, is illustrated by the 5th and 6th Regiments and the 6th Machine Gun Battalion being cited in French Army orders. The citations of the 6th Regiment (that of the 5th Regiment being similar) and that of the 6th Machine Gun Battalion are quoted below:

*Après approbation du général commandant en chef les forces expéditionnaires Américaines en France, le général commandant en chef les armées Françaises du nord et du nord-est, cite à l'Ordre de l'Armée:*

*"Le 6e Regiment de Marine Americaine, sous les ordres du Lieutenant-Colonel Lee,*

*"Engages à l'improviste dans l'offensive du 18 juillet 1918, en pleine nuit, dans un terrain inconnu et très difficile, ont déployé pendant deux jours, sans se laisser arrêter par les fatigues et les difficultés du ravitaillement en vivres et en eau, une ardeur et une ténacité remarquables, refoulant l'ennemi sur 11 kilomètres de profondeur, capturant 2,700 prisonniers, 12 canons et plusieurs centaines de mitrailleuses."*



*Au Grand Quartier Général, le 25 Octobre 1918  
(Ordre No. 10.886 "D.")*

*Le Général Commandant en Chef*

*Signé: PETAINE*

*Après approbation du général commandant en chef les forces expéditionnaires Américaines en France, le maréchal de France, commandant en chef les Armées Françaises de l'est cite à l'Ordre de l'Armée: "Le 6e Bataillon de Mitrailleuses U.S. Marine, sous les ordres du Commandant L. W. T. Waller.*

*"Quoique très fatigué par un long trajet en camion et une marche de nuit sur des routes difficiles, ce bataillon s'est précipité à l'attaque le 18 juillet 1918, près de Vierzy et a puissamment contribué à consolider et à maintenir la position atteinte ce jour-là.*

*"Dans la matinée du 19 juillet, il s'est vaillamment porté en avant, en terrain découvert, sous un violent feu d'artillerie et de mitrailleuses, soutenant résolument l'attaque lancée contre les positions renforcées de l'ennemi.*

*"Ayant à faire face à une forte résistance ennemie et à des contre-attaques continuelles, a fait preuve du plus beau courage en consolidant rapidement et en tenant résolument l'importante position conquises par l'infanterie ce jour-là."*

*Au Grand Quartier Général, le 4 Mars 1919  
(Ordre No. 13.978 "D.")*

*Le Maréchal,*

*Commandant en Chef les Armées Françaises de  
l'Est.*

*PETAINE*

Following the advance of the first day, brigade headquarters was moved forward to a cave in Vierzy.

Colonel Logan Feland was in command of the 5th Regiment during the Aisne-Marne offensive near Soissons and continued in command of it with the exception of two days in July 1918 (when Brigadier General Lejeune commanded the 4th Brigade and Colonel Neville the 5th Regiment) until 21 March 1919, when he was relieved by Colonel Harold C. Snyder, who retained command until the date of demobilization.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a captain, Harold C. Snyder took command of the 2d Replacement Battalion at Quantico in February 1918 and went overseas with the battalion in March 1918. In France, Snyder saw service at Camp Pontanezen, Brest; commanded the 10th Training Area, Prauthoy; and did duty as 2d Division liaison officer with the 89th and 32d Divisions. He also commanded the 5th Regiment from 21 March 1919 until his detachment from AEF in July 1919.

The 4th Brigade was relieved about midnight 19 July 1918, and after remaining in a reserve position until 22 July 1918, marched to an area farther in the rear, but still in a reserve position, [with] brigade headquarters being established at Tafflefontaine. After final relief from this active sector, the brigade was billeted 24–25 July 1918 in an area around Nanteuil-le-Haudouin, [with] brigade headquarters being established at Nanteuil. The brigade remained in this area until 31 July 1918.

On 25 July 1918, Brigadier General John A. Lejeune arrived and assumed command of the 4th Brigade on 26 July 1918, [with] General Orders, No. 16, reading as follows:

I have this day assumed command of the Fourth Brigade, U. S. Marines. To command this brigade is the highest honor that could come to any man. Its renown is imperishable and the skill, endurance, and valor of the officers and men have immortalized its name and that of the Marine Corps.

Brigadier General Lejeune retained command until 29 July 1918, when he became commanding general of the 2d Division, relieving Major General Harbord, who left to assume command of the Services of Supply. Colonel Neville, on this latter date, resumed command of the 4th Brigade.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a major general, John A. Lejeune assumed command of Marine Barracks, Quantico, at the outbreak of the war. In June 1918, he arrived at Brest, France. Upon reporting to the AEF commander, he was assigned to command a brigade of the 32d Division and later assumed command of 4th Brigade, 2d Division, following their attack in the Soissons offensive. On 28 July 1918, Lejeune assumed command of the 2d Division. He was the first Marine officer to hold a U.S. Army divisional command in combat.

## CHAPTER XII

### MARBACHE SECTOR, NEAR PONT-À-MOUSSON SAINT-MIHIEL OFFENSIVE

**D**uring the last two days of July 1918, the units of the brigade entrained for a 24-hour railroad journey, which took them to an area around Nancy, with headquarters at Villers-lès-Nancy, where they remained resting and refitting until 9 August 1918.

On 7 August 1918, information was received of the promotion of Brigadier General Lejeune to the grade of major general, and of Colonel Neville to the grade of brigadier general, both to date from 1 July 1918.

Colonel Albertus W. Catlin arrived in the United States on-board the [USS] *America* [ID 3006] on 3 August 1918. Colonel Catlin, having been wounded on 6 June 1918 during the first attack on Bois de Belleau, was admitted to Hospital No. 2, Paris, France, on the next day; [he] was discharged on 22 July 1918, granted two months' sick leave, and sailed for New York from Brest, France, on 25 July 1918.

On 5 August 1918, movement of units of the brigade was started for the occupation of the Marbache subsector near Pont-a-Mousson on the Moselle River. By 8 August 1918, the movement was completed, with headquarters established at Scarponne just across the Moselle River from Dieulouard. The sector was quiet and occupation uneventful except for an enemy raid that was successfully repulsed and prisoners captured.

On 8 August 1918, Lieutenant Colonel Earl H. Ellis was appointed adjutant of the 4th Brigade, relieving Lieutenant Colonel Harry R. Lay, who had been detailed as inspector general of the 2d Division.

The relief from the Marbache sector was completed on 18 August 1918, and the brigade moved to an area about 20 kilometers southeast of Toni, [with] headquarters being established at Favières. Intensive training for the impending Saint-Mihiel offensive was indulged in here.

The brigade started to move from this area on the night of 2 September 1918, and after a series of night marches, during which time headquarters were established at Pont-Saint-Vincent, Velainen-Haye, and Bouvron, the brigade arrived just outside of Manonville, [with] headquarters being established in Manonville. From 12 to 16 September 1918, the brigade was engaged in the Saint-Mihiel offensive in the vicinity of Remenauville, Thiaucourt, Xammes, and Jaulny as a unit of the 2d Division of the I Corps of the First Army. Headquarters during these operations were successively at 1 kilometer north of Lironville, Thiaucourt, and finally at Manonville on 16 September 1918. On 20 September 1918, the brigade moved to an area south of Toni, with headquarters at Chaudenay. The brigade remained in this area until 25 September 1918, when it moved by rail to an area south of Châlons-sur-Marne, with headquarters at Sarry.

# CHAPTER XIII

## THE CHAMPAGNE

### BATTLE OF BLANC MONT RIDGE

### CAPTURE OF SAINT-ÉTIENNE

### MARCH TO LEFFINCOURT

**M**arshal Foch, having asked for an American division to assist in breaking through the powerful German defenses in the Champagne, the 2d Division, including the Marine brigade, was temporarily placed at the disposal of the Fourth French Army under General [Henri] Gouraud from 27 September 1918 to 10 October 1918. At first, it was directly subject to the orders of Marshal Pétain, but before the actual fighting began it was placed directly under the orders of General Gouraud. On 28 September 1918, the 4th Brigade moved by bus and [by] marching to the Souain-Suippes area, with brigade headquarters at Suippes.

On 1 October 1918, in an order of the 2d Division, the commanding general of the 2d Division encouraged his division with the following words:

1. The greatest battles in the world's history are now being fought. The Allies are attacking successfully on all fronts. The valiant Belgian Army has surprised and defeated the enemy in Flanders; the English, who have been attacking the enemy without ceasing since August 8, have advanced beyond the Hindenburg Line, between Cambria and St.

Quentin, capturing thousands of prisoners and hundreds of cannon; the heroic Allied Army of the Orient has decisively defeated the Bulgars; the British have captured over 50,000 prisoners in Palestine and have inflicted a mortal blow on the Turk; and our own First Army and the Fourth French Army have already gained much success in the preliminary stages of their attack between the Meuse and Suippes Rivers.

2. Owing to its world-wide reputation for skill and valor, the Second Division was selected by the commander in chief of the Allied Armies as his special reserve, and has been held in readiness to strike a swift and powerful blow at the vital point of the enemy's line. The hour to move forward has now come, and I am confident that our division will pierce the enemy's line, and once more gloriously defeat the Hun.

The battle of Blanc Mont Ridge was one of the most powerful and effective blows struck under the direction of Marshal Foch against the retreating Germans, and its brilliantly successful conclusion was due in a great degree to the military genius of Major General John A. Lejeune of the Marines.

On 27 September 1918, Major General John A. Lejeune called on General Gouraud at the headquarters of the Fourth French Army, who explained the situation at the front to him. Facing a large relief map of the battlefield, General Gouraud placed his hand on the Blanc Mont Ridge and said: "General, this position is the key of all the German defenses of this sector, including the whole Rheims Massif. If this ridge can be taken, the Germans will be obliged to retreat along the whole front 30 kilometers to the river Aisne. Do you think your division could effect [sic] its capture?" Major General Lejeune responded that he felt certain the 2d Division could take the stronghold pointed out, whereupon he was informed that he would be ordered to make the attack within a few days and was directed to prepare a plan for the assault.

At this time, the 2d Division was directly subject to the orders of Marshal Pétain, but later in the day General Gouraud informed Major General Lejeune that, after an explanation of the circum-



stances, Marshal Pétain had assigned the division to the Fourth French Army.

The general plan provided for an attack by the whole Fourth French Army between the Argonne and the Suippes River. On 1 October 1918, the brigade with the rest of the 2d Division marched to the front line near Somme-Py on the night of 1–2 October 1918, and relieved elements of a French division. The brigade headquarters was located in the trenches about two kilometers south of Somme-Py. The relief was effected before daylight without incident.

The battle of Blanc Mont Ridge was fought and won by the 2d Division, as a unit of the Fourth French Army, between 3 and 9 October 1918, over the desolated white chalky ground of the Champagne, which was scarred and shell pocked by years of artillery fire, marked with huge mine craters, gridironed with an intricate maze of deep trenches and concrete fortifications, and covered with tangled masses of wire.

The overwhelming success and the far-reaching effect of the 2d Division's part in these operations, the cleaning up of the Essen Hook, the capture of Blanc Mont Ridge, and the capture of Saint-Étienne, are well described in general terms in the following excerpts from official publications. That the plan was as brilliantly executed as it was daringly conceived is shown by this extract from an order of the 2d Division dated 11 November 1918, reading in part as follows:

In the Champagne district, October 2 to 10, it fought beside the Fourth French Army. On October 3, it seized Blanc Mont Ridge, the keystone of the arch of the main German position, advanced beyond the ridge and, although both flanks were unsupported, it held all its gains with the utmost tenacity, inflicting tremendous losses on the enemy. This victory freed Rheims and forced the entire German Army between that city and the Argonne Forest to retreat to the Aisne, a distance of 30 kilometers.

The amazing success of the attack and the vital effect of the capture of Blanc Mont Ridge and Saint-Étienne is described in the words of General Gouraud himself in a letter to Marshal Foch, reading in part as follows:

Because of the brilliant part played by this "Grand Unit" in the offensive of the Fourth Army during the autumn of 1918, I propose the Second American Division for a citation in "The Order of the Army" upon the following specific grounds:

The Second Infantry Division, United States, brilliantly commanded by General Lejeune \* \* \* played a glorious part in the operations of the Fourth Army in the Champagne in October 1918. On the 3d of October, this division drove forward and seized in a single assault the strongly entrenched German positions between Blanc Mont and Medeah Ferme, and again pressing forward to the outskirts of Saint-Étienne-à-Arnes it made in the course of the day an advance of about 6 kilometers.

It captured several thousand prisoners, many cannon and machine guns, and a large quantity of other military matériel. This attack, combined with that of the French divisions on its left and right, resulted in the evacuation by the enemy of his positions on both sides of the river Suippe and his withdrawal from the Massif de Notre-Dame-des-Champs.

The further opinion of the French as to the results and effect of the 2d Division's operations in Champagne is set forth in the following quoted extract from Information Bulletin No. 12 of the Fourth French Army dated 7 October 1918:

Up to October 4, at which date the present bulletin is written, the Fourth Army has pushed its advance up to objectives of the very highest importance. A splendid American division, full of dash and ardor, the Second Division, United States, placed at the disposition of the Twenty-first Corps on October 3, made itself master of Massif du Blanc Mont, which dominates the valley of the Arnes and gives us excellent outlook on the valley of the Suippe in rear of the region of Monts. This conquest rapidly brought about the downfall of Notre-Dame-des-Champs and the Grand Bois de Saint Souplet.

The American commander in chief in his first report describes the battle of Blanc Mont in the following words:

The Second Division conquered the complicated defense works on their front against a persistent defense worthy of the grimmest period of trench warfare and attacked the strongly held wooded hill of Blanc Mont, which they captured in a second assault, sweeping over it with consummate dash and skill. This division then repulsed strong counterattacks before the village and cemetery of St. Etienne and took the town, forcing the Germans to fall back from before Rheims and yield positions they had held since September 1914.

In his final report, the American commander in chief remarked as follows:

The Second Division completed its advance on this front by the assault of the wooded heights of Mont Blanc, the key point of the German position, which was captured with consummate dash and skill. The division here repulsed violent counterattacks and then carried our lines into the village of St. Etienne, thus forcing the Germans to fall back before Rheims and yield positions which they had held since September 1914.

The citation of the 5th Regiment (the citation of the 6th Regiment being identical) reads as follows:

*Après approbation du général commandant en chef les forces expéditionnaires Américaines en France, le maréchal de France, commandant en chef les armées françaises de l'est, cite à l'Ordre de l'Armée:*

*“Le 5ème Regiment de Marine Americain, sous les ordres du Colonel Logan Feland:*

*“A pris une part glorieuse aux opérations engagées par la 4ème Armée en Champagne, en Octobre 1918. Le 3 Octobre 1918, a participé à l'attaque des positions allemandes fortement retranchées entre le Blanc-Mont et la Ferme Medeah, et, poussant de l'avant jusqu'aux abords de Saint-Etienne à Ames, a réalisé une avance de 6 kilomètres. A fait plusieurs milliers de prisonniers, capturé des canons, des mitrailleuses et un important matériel de guerre. Cette attaque, combinée avec celle des Divisions Françaises, a eu pour conséquence l'évacuation des deux rives de la Suipe et du Massif de Notre-Dame-des-Champs.”*

*Au Grand Quartier Général, le 21 Mars 1919  
Le Maréchal, Commandant en Chef les Armées  
Françaises de l'Est  
Signe: PÉTAN*

*(Ordre No. 14.712 "D.")*

On 10 October 1918, having been relieved from the line in the Blanc Mont sector, the brigade took station in the Suippes-Somme-Suippes-Nantivet area and the adjacent camps with headquarters at Suippes, being assigned as Fourth French Army reserve. The brigade remained in this area resting and refitting until 14 October 1918, when, in accordance with orders, it marched to the Vadenay-Bouy-la-Veuve-Dampierre area, north of Châlons-sur-Marne, with headquarters at Bouy. While here, orders were received placing the 4th Brigade provisionally at the disposal of the IX French Army Corps to hold a sector in the region [of] Attigny-Voncq-Aisne River.

Accordingly, on 20 October 1918, the brigade was temporarily detached from the 2d Division and marched to the area Somme-Suippes-Suippes-Nantivet, with headquarters at Suippes. On 21 October 1918, in obedience to orders, the Marines hiked to the vicinity of Leffincourt, where brigade headquarters was established. While about to take over the assigned sector, the 4th Brigade received orders to rejoin the 2d Division, which was preparing to enter the Meuse-Argonne offensive. After a hard march, these orders were obeyed and brigade headquarters established at Montpellier on 23 October 1918. On 24 October 1918, Major Matthew H. Kingman relieved Major Littleton W. T. Waller Jr. in command of the 6th Machine Gun Battalion, Major Waller joining the 2d Division staff as division machine gun officer.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Maj Matthew H. Kingman commanded 6th Machine Gun Battalion in the Verdun sector. Kingman was wounded by machine-gun fire in the fighting at Château-Thierry, but recovered to participate in the Aisne-Marne, Saint-Mihiel, and Meuse-Argonne offensives, concluding with the march to the Rhine.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a brigadier general, Littleton W. T. Waller Jr. sailed to France in December 1917 as commander of the 1st Machine Gun Battalion, which had been redesignated to the 6th Machine Gun Battalion. Transferred for a short time to the 3d Division, he returned to the 2d Division to become the division machine gun officer where he fought in five major operations, during which his battalion was cited for its part in the Belleau Wood and Soissons offensives.

## CHAPTER XIV

### THE MEUSE-ARGONNE OFFENSIVE

#### CROSSING THE MEUSE RIVER

On 25 October 1918, the brigade moved to the Les Islettes area with brigade headquarters at Camp Cabaud. On the evening of 26 October 1918, it arrived in the area south of Exermont and bivouacked in the woods there that night with brigade headquarters at Exermont. The brigade remained in bivouac in this area until the night of 30–31 October 1918, when it moved forward into line to participate in the immense Meuse-Argonne offensive, which had started on 26 September 1918, the 2d Division being assigned as a unit of the V Corps.

Relieving elements of the 42d Division, just south of Landres-et-Saint-Georges, the Marine brigade early on the morning of 1 November 1918, jumped-off, following a terrific barrage, for its final operation of the war, the conclusion of which at 1100 on the morning of 11 November 1918, found the Marines firmly established on the heights of the far bank of the Meuse River after an advance of 30 kilometers.

The splendid work of the 2d Division, including the Marines, is described in official reports, and excerpts from some are given below.

In recommending that the 2d Division be cited in General Headquarters Orders for its excellent work in the attack of 1–11 November 1918, the commanding general, First Army, wrote on 16 January 1919, in part, as follows:

4. In the First Army attack of November 1, 1918, the Second Division was selected and so placed in the battle line that its known ability might be used to overcome the critical part of the enemy's defense. The salient feature of the plan of attack was to drive a wedge through Landres-et-St. Georges to the vicinity of Fosse. It was realized that if the foregoing could be accomplished, the backbone of the hostile resistance west of the Meuse would be broken and the enemy would have to retreat to the east of the Meuse. Success in this plan would immediately loosen the flanks of the First Army. The Second Division was selected to carry out this main blow.
5. The Second Division accomplished the results desired in every particular on the first day of the attack, not only clearing the hostile defenses of Landres-et-St. Georges and the Bois de Hazos but continuing its advance to the vicinity of Fosse, i.e., about 9 kilometers. This decisive blow broke the enemy's defense and opened the way for the rapid advance of the Army.

With reference to the first day's attack, the commanding general, V Army Corps, wrote officially on 2 November 1918, in part, as follows:

The division's brilliant advance of more than 9 kilometers, destroying the last stronghold on the Hindenburg Line, capturing the Freya Stellung, and going more than 9 kilometers against not only the permanent but the relieving forces in their front, may justly be regarded as one of the most remarkable achievements made by any troops in this war. For the first time, perhaps, in our experience the losses inflicted by your division upon the enemy in the offensive greatly exceeded the casualties of the division. The reports indicate, moreover, that in a single day the division has captured more artillery and machine guns than usually falls to the lot of a command during several days of hard fighting. These results must be attributed to the great dash and speed of the troops, and to the irresistible force with which they struck and overcame the enemy.



The following citation in [the] V Army Corps General Orders No. 26, dated 20 November 1918, gives a further description of these operations:

The Second Division, in line at the launching of the attack, broke through the strong enemy resistance, and, leading the advance, drove forward in a fast and determined pursuit of the enemy, who, despite new divisions hastily thrown in, was driven back everywhere on its front. This division drove the enemy across the Meuse, and under heavy fire and against stubborn resistance, built bridges and established itself on the heights. The cessation of hostilities found this division holding strong positions across the Meuse and ready for a continuation of the advance.

An order of the 2d Division dated 5 November 1918 [and] reading, in part, as follows, tells what occurred subsequent to the first day's attack:

During the night of November 2–3, the Second Division moved forward overcoming the resistance of the enemy's advanced elements and, at 6 a.m., it attacked and seized the enemy's line of defense on the ridge southeast of Vaux-en-Dieulet.

Late in the afternoon, the enemy, having reorganized his line on the border of Belval Forest, was again attacked and defeated. After nightfall and in a heavy rain, the advanced elements of the division pressed forward through the forest, and occupied a position on the heights south of Beaumont, 8 kilometers in advance of the divisions on our right and left.

During the night of November 4–5, the division again pressed forward, occupied Beaumont and Létanne and threw the enemy on its front across the Meuse.

An order of the 2d Division, dated 12 November 1918, describing the historic crossing of the Meuse River on the night before the armistice became operative, reads as follows:

1. On the night of November 10, heroic deeds were done by heroic men. In the face of a heavy artillery and withering machine-gun fire, the Second Engineers threw two foot bridges across the Meuse and the first and second battal-

ions of the Fifth Marines crossed resolutely and unflinchingly to the east bank and carried out their mission.

2. In the last battle of the war, as in all others in which this division has participated, it enforced its will on the enemy.

The commanding general of the V Army Corps has this to say about the crossing of the Meuse by the Marines, who were assisted by the artillery, engineers, and other troops of the 2d Division:

Especially I desire to commend the division for the crowning feat of its advance in crossing the Meuse River in [the] face of heavy concentrated enemy machine-gun fire, and in driving the enemy's troops before it, and in firmly establishing itself upon the heights covering the desired bridgehead. This feat will stand among the most memorable of the campaign.

With reference to the crossing of the Meuse River, the American commander in chief reported as follows:

On the night of November 10, the Fifth Corps forced a crossing of the Meuse against heavy enemy resistance between Mouzon and Pouilly, and advanced to the Inor-Mouzon road with two battalions holding the high ground northwest of Inor.

The general success achieved by the 2d Division in the Meuse-Argonne offensive is well described by the words of the order citing Major General John A. Lejeune of the Marines for an Army Distinguished Service Medal, reading in part as follows:

In the Meuse-Argonne offensive, his division was directed with such sound military judgment and ability that it broke and held, by the vigor and rapidity of execution of its attack, enemy lines which had hitherto been considered impregnable.

During this fighting, the headquarters of the 4th Brigade was successively established at Exermont, one-half kilometer north of Exermont, Sommerance, Bayonville-et-Chennery, Fosse, Belval-Bois-des-Dames, and Beaumont.

The following self-explanatory memorandum was sent out by the commanding general of the 4th Brigade:

HEADQUARTERS 4TH BRIGADE,  
MARINES, AMERICAN E. F.,

11th November '18—8.40 a. m.

PEACE MEMORANDUM No. 1

The following telephone message received from *Surprise* 1 at 8:35 a. m. this morning forwarded for compliance.

8:40 a. m. message from 5th Corps; Armistice signed and takes effect at 11 this morning. Accurate map showing locations of front line elements, including patrols and detachments, will be sent to these Headquarters without delay.

On "the eleventh hour, the eleventh day of the eleventh month, of the year 1918," Brigadier General Wendell C. Neville, commanding general of the 4th Brigade, published the following tribute to the officers and men of the 4th Brigade:

Upon this, the most momentous hour in the history of the World War, the undersigned wishes to express to his command his sincere appreciation of their unfailing devotion to duty and their heroic and courageous action during the recent operations.

The time, when the results of our efforts during the past year are shown, is here. The hour has arrived when the convulsion, which has shaken the foundations of the civilized world, has ceased. The enemy is defeated and the principles of freedom and democracy have triumphed over barbarism and autocracy. We may all feel justly proud of the extent of our participation, which has forced the enemy to a cessation of hostilities. It is fitting, at this time, to think of those of our comrades who have fallen on the field of honor and rejoice in the fact that they did not give their lives in vain.

Your display of fortitude, determination, courage, and your ability to fight has, upon more than one occasion, been a determining factor in making history, and your work has had a direct bearing upon the remarkable chain of events which have this day culminated in such a satisfactory manner. Along the fronts of Verdun, the Marne, the Aisne, Lorraine, Champagne, and the Argonne, the units of the Fourth Brigade Marines have fought valiantly, bravely, and decisively.

They have nobly sustained the sacred traditions and have added glorious pages to the already illustrious history of the United States Marine Corps. It is a record of which you may all be proud.

# CHAPTER XV

## MARCH TO THE RHINE

### ARMY OF OCCUPATION

#### SUMMARY OF OPERATIONS OF THE 4TH BRIGADE

##### *March to the Rhine*

**O**n 17 November 1918, the 2d Division commenced its march to the Rhine, passing through Belgium and Luxembourg. The German frontier was reached on 25 November 1918, crossed on 1 December 1918; [and] the Rhine reached [on] 10 December 1918, and crossed on 13 December 1918. During this march and up to the time the 4th Brigade settled down to its occupation duty in Germany, brigade headquarters were successively established at Margut, Bellefontaine, Anon, Useldange, Berg, Eppeldorf, Neuerburg, Waxweiler, Prüm, Büdesheim, Wiesbaum, Antweiler, [Bad] Neuenahr, Burgbrohl, Rheinbrohl, and Hönningen.

##### *With the Army of Occupation*

The duties of the 4th Brigade with the army of occupation in Germany were uneventful, the outstanding features being the establishment of a Rhine River patrol, manned and commanded by Marines; an extended visit, inspection, and review by the secretary of the Navy; and the operation of the 2d Division, including the Marines, made about the middle of June 1919, in which an advanced position was



Courtesy of U.S. Army Signal Corps, National Archives  
Capt Gaines Mosely, wearing the insignia of the Army of Occupation of Germany, gazes out over the Rhine River where Marines patrolled the Coblenz bridgehead after the war.

taken as a part of the concentration of the Third Army immediately preceding the signing of the treaty of peace by the Germans.

Headquarters of the 4th Brigade during the greater part of the occupation of Germany was at Nieder Bieber, while during the last operation when the advanced position was taken, just prior to Germany signing the peace treaty, it was at Herschbach. On the date the treaty was signed, the 5th Regiment, with headquarters at Hatenfels, occupied the most advanced position ever occupied by Marines in Germany. Just before departing from Germany, [4th Brigade] headquarters was at Nieder Bieber and, with the exception of Brest, France, this was the last headquarters the brigade had in Europe.

Major Charles D. Barrett relieved Lieutenant Colonel Earl H. Ellis as brigade adjutant in April 1919, and held that position until the brigade was demobilized. Lieutenant Colonel Ellis was assigned to duty as second in command of the 5th Regiment. On 12 March 1919, Colonel Logan Feland was temporarily appointed brigadier general to rank from 9 March 1919, and accepted appointment and executed oath on 17 March 1919. On 21 March 1919, Colonel Harold C. Snyder assumed command of the 5th Regiment, relieving Brigadier General Logan Feland, who, after acting as aide for the



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo

Charles D. Barrett, pictured here as a major general, served in the foreign shore expeditionary service, following his arrival in France, which included detached duty with the U.S. Army in France from 25 September 1918. He participated in the Meuse-Argonne offensive and on an assignment to the staff of the commanding general. In spring 1919, he commanded 2d Battalion, 367th Infantry, at Le Mans, France. Barrett then detached in April and reported to the commanding general of 4th Brigade. He was also credited with the creation of the French Map Detachment.

secretary of the Navy, arrived in the United States on the *Von Steuben* on 13 May 1919.

Just before the 2d Division left Germany, the commanding general of the army of occupation expressed his appreciation of the services of that division in a letter dated 2 July 1919, which is published in General Orders, 2d Division, No. 68, 5 July 1919:

As your magnificent division is about to leave his command, it is with a sense of gratitude for its splendid achievements while in the American Expeditionary Forces that the army commander expresses to you, and to your gallant officers and men his appreciation of your services.

After occupying a defensive sector between Verdun and St. Mihiel, you were placed in the line of battle and met, with stubborn resistance, the onslaughts of the enemy's hordes near Château-Thierry. Your action at Belleau Woods and your attack upon and capture of Vaux must ever remain brilliant exploits in our military history.

At Soissons, side by side with a veteran French division, you proved to our Allies the fighting value of the Army of the United States, and at St. Mihiel, in the first great American offensive, your prowess in attack was irresistible.

When in October 1918, the Allied High Command desired to reinforce the French Army by American troops of great offensive worth, by real "shock troops," you were loaned to General Gouraud's Fourth French Army and, delivered your famous assault on Blanc Mont Ridge, releasing from German menace the historic city of Rheims.

In the closing phase of the Meuse-Argonne operations, certainly no troops contributed more to the enemy's destruction than your division. After taking Landres-et-St. Georges, Bayonville-et-Chennery, and the Bois-de-la-Folie, you pierced the Bois-de-Belval, and by skillful night fighting and marching you cleared the enemy from the left bank of the Meuse and forced a crossing of the river.

Your brilliant exploits in battle are paralleled by the splendid example of soldierly bearing and discipline set by your officers and men while a part of the Army of Occupa-



tion. That spirit and dash which carried your men through the enemy's defenses still predominated when the Army was recently concentrated, preparatory to a further advance into unoccupied Germany.

Officers and soldiers of the Second Division, your achievements and sacrifices have earned for you and for your fallen comrades the praise and gratitude of our Nation.

### *Summary of the Operations with the 4th Brigade*

The 4th Brigade as a unit of the 2d Division participated in actual battle in France in the following sectors between the inclusive dates set down (as published in General Orders No. 37, 2d Division, 25 April 1919):

- Toulon sector, Verdun: from 15 March to 13 May 1918.
- Aisne defensive in the Château-Thierry sector: from 31 May to 5 June 1918.
- Château-Thierry sector (capture of Hill 142, Bouresches, Belleau Wood): from 6 June to 9 July 1918.
- Aisne-Marne (Soissons) offensive: from 18 July to 19 July 1918.
- Marbache sector, near Pont-à-Mousson on the Moselle River: from 9 August to 16 August 1918.
- Saint-Mihiel offensive, in the vicinity of Thiaucourt, Xammes, and Jaulny: from 12 September to 16 September 1918.
- Meuse-Argonne (Champagne), including the capture of Blanc Mont Ridge and Saint-Étienne: from 1 October to 10 October 1918.
- Meuse-Argonne (including crossing of the Meuse River): from 1 November to 11 November 1918.

### *Silver Bands for Colors*

Under the rulings of general headquarters, American Expeditionary Forces, the Marine Corps units serving with the 2d Division are entitled to silver bands on the staffs of their colors for battle participation in the above-mentioned engagements.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
MajGen Wendell C. Neville adorns the colors of the 4th Marine Brigade with  
the honors earned during the brigade's service in World War I.

### *Major Operations*

General headquarters, American Expeditionary Forces, ruled that the 2d Division, including the 4th Brigade, participated in only four major operations: the Aisne defensive (31 May to 5 June 1918); the Aisne-Marne offensive (18–19 July 1918); the Saint-Mihiel offensive (12–16 September 1918); and the Meuse-Argonne offensive (1–10 October 1918 and 1–10 November 1918). The operations that resulted in the capture of Blanc Mont and Saint-Étienne were construed to be included in the Meuse-Argonne offensive despite the fact that the operations were a part of the operations of the Fourth French Army, far to the west of the western limit of the American Meuse-Argonne sector and further that the work of the 2d Division was continued by another American division. The operations that resulted in the capture of Hill 142, Boursesches, Bois de la Brigade de Marine, by the Marine brigade, assisted by artillery, engineers,

etc., of the 2d Division, and the capture of Vaux by the 3d Brigade, engineers and artillery of the 2d Division, were held to be local engagements rather than major operations. The 2d Division suffered about 9,000 casualties in the Château-Thierry sector. In addition to the above major operations, Marine Corps personnel, other than that of the 4th Brigade and 2d Division, participated in the Champagne-Marne defensive, the Oise-Aisne offensive, and the Ypres-Lys offensive.

## CHAPTER XVI

### WITH THE NAVY ONBOARD THE BATTLESHIPS AND CRUISERS

#### *With the British Grand Fleet*

**D**ivision 9 of the Atlantic Fleet, composed of the *New York* (flagship), *Wyoming*, *Florida*, and *Delaware*, was detailed for service with the British Grand Fleet, rendezvoused on 24 November 1917 in Lynnhaven Roads, Chesapeake Bay, and sailed for its destination the following day.

The division took the northern passage and was 13 days en route, 4 days of which were spent in holding its own against a 90-mile gale off the Newfoundland coast. On 7 December 1917, the American battleships anchored with the British Grand Fleet in Scapa Flow, Orkney Islands, after a rousing reception and, on 26 December, were designated the Sixth Battle Squadron of the British Grand Fleet.

From the time of its arrival until 29 November 1918, this squadron, with the addition of the *Texas* in February 1918, and the substitution of the *Arkansas* for the *Delaware* in July 1918, operated with the British Grand Fleet, basing most of the time in Scapa Flow and the remainder of the time in the Firth of Forth (Rosyth [Scotland]). The squadron took its regular turn at convoy duty, patrol duty, target practice, and fleet exercises with all the other squadrons of the British Grand Fleet. The squadron was at sea on an average of from 8 to 10 days each month and followed the procedure of the Grand Fleet in all respects, even going so far as to shift to the British method of signaling.

Major Nelson P. Vulte was division Marine officer of this division the entire time it was a unit of the British Grand Fleet. With reference to the operations of this division, the secretary of the Navy in his annual report made the following statements:

Assigned one of the two places of honor and importance in the battle line, this American division did its full share of the Grand Fleet's work, including patrol search for the enemy, protection of convoys, mining, and other forces, and, most important of all, in the repeated attempts to engage the German High Seas Fleet, for which the ships of the Grand Fleet were kept in the highest state of efficiency and readiness. Our battleships were attacked six times by submarines. On one occasion, off the Norwegian coast, four torpedoes were fired at the *Florida* and two at the *Delaware*, and at another time three were fired at the *New York*. Not one of our vessels was hit, and the only damage done was to the *New York*, which while leading the division into Pentland Firth, was rammed by a submerged submarine. Two blades of her propeller were broken off, but officers and crew were convinced that the blows from the propeller sank the U-boat.

### *Surrender of the German High Seas Fleet*

The American battleships occupied a prominent position in the north column of the Grand Fleet on the occasion of the surrender of the German High Seas Fleet on 21 November 1918 off the mouth of the Firth of Forth and assisted in escorting it into that port where the German vessels were searched and later dispatched under guard to Scapa Flow, Orkney Islands, for internment.

The American vessels did not accompany the surrendered German war vessels to Scapa, but were detached from the British Grand Fleet on 1 December 1918, and sailed from Rosyth for Portland (Weymouth [Dorset, England]). The day after the surrender of the German Fleet, the *Nevada*, which had been serving with Division 6 of the Atlantic Fleet in Bantry Bay, Ireland, joined Division 9 at Rosyth and proceeded with it to Portland.

### *At Castletown Berehaven, Bantry Bay, Ireland*

The annual report of the secretary of the Navy makes the following remarks concerning Division 6:

Division 6, composed of the *Utah* (flagship), *Nevada*, and *Oklahoma*, was based on Berehaven, Bantry Bay, Ireland, its principal duty being to protect our convoys from possible enemy raiders. This division made two trips into the [English] Channel, escorting convoys when enemy submarines were reported in the vicinity.

Major Leon W. Hoyt was the division Marine officer during its entire stay in European waters.

The *Nevada* joined the American battleships of Division 9 the day after the surrender of the German Fleet off Rosyth, near Edinburgh.

### *Escorting the President into Brest*

Division 9 joined Division 6 at Portland Bill [southernmost point of Dorset] and both divisions left that port in time to assist the *Pennsylvania* in escorting President [Woodrow] Wilson, onboard the *George Washington*, into the harbor of Brest.

### *Welcomes Home by Naval Review*

On 14 December 1918, our battleships sailed from Brest for the United States, arrived off Ambrose Lightship the afternoon of Christmas Day, and the next morning steamed into New York Harbor where they were accorded a great demonstration. The naval review was followed by a land parade of all the returning officers, bluejackets, and Marines.

### *The Atlantic Fleet*

Colonel ([later] Brigadier General) John T. Myers was the fleet Marine officer of the Atlantic Fleet from before the outbreak of the war to 23 August 1918, being relieved on that date by Colonel Frederic L. Bradman, who continued on that duty until after the armistice.

Colonel John F. McGill was force Marine officer of the Battleship Force and later force Marine officer of Battleship Force Two until 14 August 1918, when he was relieved by Major Harold F. Wirgman, who continued as such until the force was suspended in September 1918.

Lieutenant Colonel James McE. Huey was force Marine officer of Battleship Force One from 3 September 1917 to 29 December 1917, when the Marines were temporarily withdrawn from the force. Major Richard H. Tebbs Jr. was force Marine officer of the Cruiser Force.

### *The Pacific Fleet*

Colonel Richard M. Cutts was fleet Marine officer of the Pacific Fleet from 1 November 1916 to 14 October 1918; and Lieutenant Colonel Charles B. Taylor [held the position] from 15 October 1918 until after the armistice.

### *The Asiatic Fleet*

The Marines of the *Brooklyn*, flagship of the Asiatic Fleet, participated in the activities around Vladivostok, Siberia, in 1918. In June 1918, Vladivostok, and practically all of Siberia, was under the control of the Bolsheviki [or Bolsheviks]. The Bolsheviki, assisted by German and Austrian prisoners of war, were resisting the advance of the Czechoslovaks, who were trying to reach Vladivostok in that city on 29 June 1918, there were approximately 12,000 well-organized Czechoslovaks, only about 2,500 of whom were armed or equipped. On the foregoing date, the Czechoslovaks in the city took it over from the Bolsheviki after a three-hour battle near its center and, on the afternoon of that day, Rear Admiral Austin M. Knight, commander-in-chief of the Asiatic Fleet, ordered a detachment of American Marines ashore to guard the American consulate and to act as part of an Allied force composed of British, Japanese, Chinese, and Czechoslovaks to patrol the city.

In July 1918, Marines from the *Brooklyn* acted as guards over German and Austrian prisoners of war on Russian Island, about five miles from Vladivostok, while Marines from the same vessel consti-

tuted part of an Allied military force of American and British Marines, Japanese and Chinese bluejackets, and Czechoslovak soldiers, which was organized to prevent a threatened strike and disorder among the workmen in the Russian navy yard at Vladivostok.

The *Albany* was at Vladivostok from 2 April 1919 until relieved by the *New Orleans* on 25 July 1919. Each of these ships, while they were anchored off Vladivostok, kept a small guard of Marines at the United States Naval Radio Station, Russian Island.

Colonel Carl Gamborg-Andresen was fleet Marine officer of the Asiatic Fleet from 25 August 1915 to 17 July 1917; Colonel Louis McC. Little [served] from 18 July 1917 to 25 April 1918; and Colonel Eli T. Fryer [served] from that date until after the armistice.



## CHAPTER XVII

### THE ACTIVITIES OF THE 5TH BRIGADE

#### *The 5th Brigade*

**T**he units of the 5th Brigade were never together as a brigade in France or at any time an element of a division, and for that reason its commanding general was assigned additional duty in the American Expeditionary Forces.

Brigadier General Eli K. Cole, the first commanding general of the 5th Brigade, arrived in France on 24 September 1918 and proceeded to headquarters, 41st Division (1st Depot Division), Saint-Aignan, France, reporting there 1–4 October 1918; on 6 October 1918, he joined the 2d Division at Souain, France, as an observer and remained with the 2d Division until 26 October 1918, when he left to report at Saint-Aignan. On 28 October 1918, Brigadier General Cole arrived at Saint-Aignan and assumed command of the 41st Division (1st Depot Division). From 27 December 1918 to 10 January 1919, he commanded the 1st Replacement Depot. From 12 January to 3 February 1919, he commanded the American Embarkation Center at Le Mans, France. From 23 February 1919 to 4 March 1919, he commanded the Forwarding Camp at Le Mans, France. During 5–21 March 1919, Brigadier General Cole was occupied inspecting the units of the 5th Brigade. He left Tours, France, on 31 March, arrived at Brest the same day, [and] was detached from the American Expeditionary Forces on 31 March and sailed for the United States on the [RMS] *Mauretania* [1906], arriving at New York [on] 7 April 1919.

Brigadier General Smedley D. Butler relieved Brigadier General Cole as commanding general of the brigade on 9 April 1919 and retained command until it was demobilized in August 1919.

One of the most prominent and outstanding features of the American Expeditionary Forces was the administration of Camp Pontanezen at Brest, France, by Brigadier General Smedley D. Butler, United States Marine Corps, from 6 October 1918 to the latter part of July 1919. The words of the citation conferring upon him the Army Distinguished Service Medal describes in general terms the important work accomplished by Brigadier General Butler:

Smedley D. Butler, brigadier general, United States Marine Corps. For exceptionally meritorious and distinguished services. He has commanded with ability and energy Pontanezen Camp at Brest during the time in which it has developed into the largest embarkation camp in the world. Confronted with problems of extraordinary magnitude in supervising the reception, entertainment, and departure of the large numbers of officers and soldiers passing through this camp, he has solved all with conspicuous success, performing services of the highest character for the American Expeditionary Forces.

Brigadier General Butler returned to the United States in command of the 5th Brigade on the [USS] *Siboney* [AD 2999], arriving at Hampton Roads, Virginia, on 8 August 1919.

Major William C. Wise [Jr.] was brigade adjutant from the date the brigade was organized to 25 September 1918; Major Charles D. Barrett relieved Major Wise and acted as adjutant until he went to the 4th Brigade to relieve Lieutenant Colonel Ellis; Major Calvin B. Matthews was brigade adjutant from 11 July 1919 to the date the brigade was demobilized.

### *The 11th Regiment*

Colonel George Van Orden commanded the 11th Regiment during its entire existence. The 11th Regiment was split up, its several units being spread all over France. Units of this regiment performed duty at various times at the following places: Brest, Tours, Montierchaume



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
During World War I, then-Col Smedley D. Butler commanded the 13th Regiment until LtCol Douglas C. McDougal assumed command. For exceptionally meritorious service, he was awarded the Army Distinguished Service Medal, the Navy Distinguished Service Medal, and the French Order of the Black Star.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Col George Van Orden, seen wearing the patch of the 5th Brigade, commanded the 11th Regiment, 5th Marine Brigade, in France. He was decorated by the French government with the Order of the Black Star.

(Indre), Havre, Gievres (Loire-et-Cher), Marseilles, Toulon (Bouches-du-Rhône), Miramas (Bouches-du-Rhône), Issoudun (Indre), La Pallice, La Rochelle (Charente-Inférieure), Mehun (Cher), Saint-Aignan-Noyers, Romorantin (Loire-et-Cher), Marans, Nevers, Aigrefeuille, Barmant, Somme, Châteauroux (Indre), Camp Covington (Camp Carret) near Marseilles, Paris (Headquarters Detachment, American Peace Commission).

The officers and men performed duties of various kinds, among such being: post commanders, post and assistant post adjutants, personnel adjutants, regulating officers, assistant to the depot engineer, receiving officers, entertainment officers, assistant post chaplain, police officers, prison officers, camp guards, dock guards, commanding officers of troops, police sergeants, inspectors of the guard, district fire marshals, post welfare officers, district athletic officers, assistant provost marshals, fire patrol officers, fire marshals, transportation guard service, guard duty over prisoners, quartermaster property guard, interpreters, etc.

### *The 13th Regiment*

Colonel Smedley D. Butler commanded the 13th Regiment from the date of its organization until 19 November 1918, on which date Lieutenant Colonel Douglas C. McDougal assumed command and remained its commanding officer until it was demobilized.

Like the 11th Regiment, the units of this regiment performed duty in the various posts in the services of supply, among such places being Brest, Bordeaux, Saint-Nazaire, La Rochelle, La Pallice, Rochefort, Montoir, Bassens (Gironde), Sursol (Gironde), Casino-de-Lilas (Bordeaux), La Teste (Gironde), Beau Desert (Gironde), Nantes, Saint-Sulpice (Gironde), Savenay, St. Loubès (Gironde), Lormont, Carbon-Blanc, Grange Neuve, Genicart, Croix d'Hins, La Baule, Isle of Sainte-Anne (Nantes), Penhouet, [and] Usine Brûlée.

The officers and men performed duties of various kinds, among such being provost guard, hospital center guard, camp guard, railroad transportation officers, commanding dock guard, dock guard, unloading ships, erecting tents at Pontanezen Barracks, military police, warehouse guards, convoying of railroad trains, special guards for shipments of commissary supplies, assistants to camp commander at



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo  
Pictured here as a brigadier general, Douglas C. McDougal was assigned to Quantico in July 1918 for duty with the 13th Regiment and, in September of that year, sailed for France as second in command, where he remained through the end of the war.



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo

One of the most prominent accomplishments of 5th Brigade Marines was the administration of Camp Pontanezen, Brest, which stood as one of the largest embarkation camps in the world to that date. The camp was the point of reception, entertainment, and departure for large numbers of officers and men on their way back to the United States.

Camp Pontanezen, prison guards, assisting thousands of convalescent and sick soldiers who disembarked from the *Leviathan* to get to Camp Pontanezen, inspector general's department, base section No. 1, stockade guard, traffic police, motor transportation convoy guard, dock guard secret service, segregation camp, and railway patrol.

### *The 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion*

Major Ernest A. Perkins commanded the 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion from the date of its organization until 4 November 1918; Captain Franklin A. Hart [commanded] from that date until 12 November 1918; and from 12 November 1918 to date of demobilization Major Allen H. Turnage was the commanding officer. This battalion performed duty at Camp Pontanezen during its entire stay in France.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### CASUALTIES

**D**uring the period of the World War, the Marine Corps personnel suffered casualties in actual battle in France with the American Expeditionary Forces (2d Division and aviation); in aviation while operating as part of the naval service in France; and in the West Indies in operations against the bandits of Santo Domingo.

#### *Marine Corps Casualties*

Marine Corps deaths in the American Expeditionary Forces, as obtained from Marine Corps records on 14 January 1920, are divided as follows:

<b>Character</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Enlisted</b>	<b>Total</b>
Killed in action	45	1,420	1,465
Died of wounds received in action	30	961	991
Died of accident	3	24	27
Died of disease	14	255	269
Died of other causes	1	11	12
<b>Total</b>	<b>93</b>	<b>2,671</b>	<b>2,764</b>





Photo courtesy of the Clifton B. Cates Collection, Marine Corps Archives  
Marine casualties gather for a photograph during World War I.



Photo courtesy of the Clifton B. Cates Collection, Marine Corps Archives  
U.S. Navy corpsmen served alongside the Marines in combat, in the trenches, and all throughout the war.

The following is a summary of the casualties sustained by the 4th Brigade from 15 March to 11 November 1918, as published in General Orders, No. 66, 2d Division, American Expeditionary Forces, dated 2 July 1919:

## Fourth Brigade casualties

Operations	Killed		Died of wounds		Missing		Wounded (severely)		Wounded (slightly)		Wounded (unknown)		Gassed		Total	
	Officers	Men	Officers	Men	Officers	Men	Officers	Men	Officers	Men	Officers	Men	Officers	Men		
Toulon sector (Verdun)																
15 March–13 May	0	12	2	44	0	0	0	16	6	46	0	89	4	287	12	494
Aisne defensive and Château-Thierry sector																
31 May–9 July	25	724	9	304	0	33	3	322	20	656	46	2,123	9	436	112	4,598
Aisne–Marne offensive																
18–25 July	10	156	5	104		66	9	250	20	489	30	911	2	39	76	2,015
Marbache sector																
9–22 August	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	2	0	8	0	3	0	0	0	15
Saint-Mihiel offensive																
12–16 September	3	57	0	86	0	11	3	124	6	334	4	287	0	4	16	903
Meuse–Argonne (Champagne)																
1–10 October	9	320	8	155	0	31	23	380	43	862	6	480	6	141	95	2,369
Meuse–Argonne offensive																
1–11 November	8	189	1	59	0	20	7	222	20	467	6	206	3	55	45	1,218
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>55</b>	<b>1,459</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>753</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>161</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>1,316</b>	<b>115</b>	<b>2,862</b>	<b>92</b>	<b>4,099</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>962</b>	<b>356</b>	<b>11,612</b>

### *Aviation Casualties*

The following table shows the casualties sustained by the Marine aviation forces between 6 April 1917 and 11 November 1918:

<b>Character</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Enlisted</b>	<b>Total</b>
Killed in action	2	0	2
Died of wounds	1	0	1
Died of accident	6	6	12
Died of disease	1	25	26
Died of other causes	1	0	1
Wounded in action	2	3	5
<b>Total</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>47</b>

### *Total Marine Corps Deaths*

From 6 April 1917 to 10 September 1919, 131 officers and 3,489 enlisted men died, [or] a total of 3,620 Marine Corps deaths from all causes.

### *Casualties in the Dominican Republic*

During the period between 6 April 1917 and 11 November 1918, 1 officer was wounded in action, 4 enlisted men were killed in action, and 13 [were] wounded in action in the Dominican Republic in operations against bandits.

### *Lost on the Cyclops*

Two Marines died when the [USS] *Cyclops* [AC 4] was lost at sea in March 1918.

### *Casualties of Naval Personnel*

Of the 60 naval medical officers, 12 naval dental officers, and 500 enlisted men of the Medical Corps of the Navy serving with the Marines in the American Expeditionary Force, 1 commissioned officer and 12 enlisted men were killed; 8 commissioned officers and 101 enlisted men were wounded or gassed.

## CHAPTER XIX

### CITATIONS OF MARINE ORGANIZATIONS

DAYS IN FRANCE

ARTILLERY CAPTURED

PRISONERS CAPTURED

KILOMETERS ADVANCED

DECORATIONS AWARDED

#### *Citations in French Army Orders*

**T**he French Army recognized the splendid work of the 5th and 6th Regiments by citing them three times in army orders for achievements in the Château-Thierry sector, the Aisne-Marne, and the Meuse-Argonne (Champagne). The 6th Machine Gun Battalion was similarly cited for its work in the Château-Thierry sector and the Aisne-Marne, and the 4th Brigade for its work in the Château-Thierry sector.

Information was received in January 1920 that the War Department had accepted the award of the French fourragère in the colors of the ribbon of the Croix de Guerre for several Army organizations and the three units of the 4th Brigade. Prior to this date, the only American organizations that had received permission to accept or wear the French fourragère were three sections of the ambulance service and one aero squadron, all of which were temporary organizations and have now been demobilized.

### *Days in France*

A Marine Corps unit arrived in France with the first expedition of American troops. From 26 June 1917 to 11 November 1918, Marines were in Europe with the American Expeditionary Forces a total of 504 days, of which 66 days were in active sectors and 71 in quiet sectors.

### *Artillery Captured by 2d Division*

The commanding general, 2d Division, under date of 30 December 1918, reported to General Headquarters, American Expeditionary Forces, the following data with reference to artillery and machine guns captured:

Sector	Heavy artillery	Light artillery	Trench mortars	Machine guns	Antitank guns
Verdun	0	0	0	0	0
Château-Thierry	0	*	12	119	0
Soissons	9	66	2	200	
Marbache	0	0	0	0	0
Saint-Mihiel	60	61	0	122	0
Blanc Mont	5	37	27	409	8
Meuse-Argonne	0	105**	17	500	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>74</b>	<b>269</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>1,350</b>	<b>8</b>

\*A small number of light artillery was captured, but no count made.

\*\*On account of the rapid advance, for a total of about 29 kilometers, during which time these guns in position and along the roads were overrun and left behind, it was impossible to make an accurate check of the them, and therefore the figures report guns both heavy and light. They were taken from reports of subordinate commanders made at the time. Rifles were not counted.

### *Prisoners Captured*

The 2d Division captured 12,026 prisoners, which is 19.07 percent of the total prisoners captured by the entire American Expeditionary Forces.

### *Kilometers Advanced*

The 2d Division advanced 60 kilometers against the enemy.

### *Decorations Awarded Marines*

The following number of decorations was awarded [to] Marines during the war:

Medals of Honor (Army)	5
Distinguished Service Medals (Army)	8
Distinguished Service Crosses (Army)	363
Distinguished Service Order (British)	1
Croix de guerre (French)	1,237
Legion of Honor (French)	19
Médaille Militaire (French)	10
Belgian decorations	10
Chinese decorations	1
Italian decorations	9
Montenegrin decorations	4
Portuguese decorations	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,668</b>

The above number of Distinguished Service Crosses (Army) awarded includes 42 awarded to Navy Medical Corps personnel, 2 to YMCA personnel, and 2 to French officers serving with Marines. The above number of Croix de Guerre (French) awarded includes 82 awarded to Navy Medical Corps and Navy Dental Corps personnel and 3 to Navy chaplains serving with Marines. One Navy chaplain was awarded a Legion of Honor (French), but this is not included in the above.

# CHAPTER XX

## RIFLE PRACTICE

### RIFLE AND PISTOL COMPETITIONS

#### *Rifle Practice*

In recent years, the Marine Corps has devoted a great deal of time and energy to rifle practice, believing that one of the first requirements of a soldier is to know how to shoot. During the period of the war, target practice was given special attention and, in 1918, it was announced that no enlisted men would be sent overseas who had not qualified as marksman or better. This announcement created even greater interest than before in target practice among the enlisted personnel and gratifying results were obtained on all rifle ranges. The Marines that arrived in France were educated riflemen but, despite that fact, rifle ranges of some character were established and used in every spot of France and Germany where the Marines remained long enough to make it feasible and practicable to do so.

The percentage of marksmanship qualifications of the enlisted personnel of the Marine Corps on various dates in the American Expeditionary Forces and in the United States was as follows:

<b>Place and date</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
Entire Marine Corps, 6 April 1917	48.0
Marines of AEF, 11 November 1918	68.1
Entire Marine Corps, 30 November 1918	67.1
Entire Marine Corps, 1 March 1918	66.0
Marines of AEF, 1 July 1919	81.6



The number of marksmanship qualifications of the last six years in the Marine Corps was as follows:

<b>Classification</b>	<b>1914</b>	<b>1915</b>	<b>1916</b>	<b>1917</b>	<b>1918</b>	<b>1919</b>
Expert rifleman	596	883	1,287	1,709	6,019	7,851
Sharpshooter	2,749	2,536	1,984	2,373	8,933	10,642
Marksmen	757	1,471	2,594	6,011	14,826	21,918
<b>Total qualified</b>	<b>4,102</b>	<b>4,890</b>	<b>5,865</b>	<b>10,093</b>	<b>29,778</b>	<b>40,411</b>
<b>Percentage</b>	<b>41.5</b>	<b>49.3</b>	<b>59.1</b>	<b>37.9</b>	<b>67</b>	<b>82.8</b>

### *Rifle and Pistol Competitions*

During the period of the war, the Marine Corps rifle teams, teams representing Marine Corps units, and teams partly composed of Marines engaged in seven important competitions.

(1) The National Rifle Association and the national matches held at Camp Perry, Ohio, in 1918. Marines won the following National Rifle Association matches: Members' match, 300-yard rapid-fire match, Wimbledon cup match, Marine Corps match, President's match, and the grand aggregate; and took second place in the Leech cup match and the 200-yard rapid-fire match. Of the national matches, Marines won the national team match and United States Service match; took 6th, 9th, 11th, 12th, 26th, 30th, 67th, 68th, 69th, and 71st places in the national individual match; took 2d place in the national individual pistol match; and three Marines were among the first hundred of the individual pistol match in which there were 942 shooters entered.

(2) The National Rifle Association and the national matches held at Caldwell, New Jersey, in 1919. The members of the 1919 Marine Corps rifle team squad made a splendid showing in the rifle matches, outclassing their military and civilian competitors in almost every match held. The Marines won 13 matches out of the 16 in which they were entered; civilian riflemen took 2 events; and the cavalry 1. Marines won the following matches: company team, enlisted men's

team, member's, Marine Corps cup, rapid fire, regimental team, veteran team, two-man team, president's, grand aggregate, national individual, United Service, and the national team. Four Marines were on the American Expeditionary Forces team, which took second place.

(3) The 26th annual Sea Girt Interstate Tournament held at Sea Girt, New Jersey, in 1919. The Marines won 14 of the 18 matches in which they were entered, winning the following matches: Hayes, Meany, Spencer, two-man team (New Jersey), Wingate, Libbey, all-corners expert, Cruikshank trophy, Rogers trophy, Sadler trophy, Dryden trophy, McAlpin trophy, Roe all-comers long range, and Sea Girt championship.

(4) The American Expeditionary Forces rifle, pistol, and musketry competition, held on the D'Avours Range at Le Mans, France, in May 1919. The first three places in the individual rifle competition were won by Marines; a Marine won the individual pistol match; the 5th Regiment stood first in the regimental standing, followed by the 13th, 6th, and 11th Regiments in 7th, 8th, and, 11th places in the order mentioned; a Marine won first place in the individual automatic rifle competition. The 2d Division led all other divisions.

(5) The Inter-Allied Games held on the D'Avours Range at Le Mans, France, in July 1919. The American Expeditionary Forces team, on which [there] were four Marines, defeated all nations. A Marine took second place in the individual rifle match.

(6) Third Army championship (Amarok shoot) held on the rifle range at Wehr, Germany, under the auspices of the 3d Division in June 1919. The Marines and the 2d Division won most of the honors in this competition.

(7) A special Inter-Allied rifle competition for five-men teams on a 300-meter range near Paris, France. France won and America was second. Two Marines were on the American team.

# CHAPTER XXI

## AVIATION

### *Strength and Distribution*

On 6 April 1917, the Marine section of naval aviation, consisting of 5 officers and 30 enlisted men, was stationed at Naval Air Station Pensacola, Florida, as part of the complement of that station.

During April, May, and June 1917, the Marine aviation section was transferred to a combination land and water station for Marine fliers at Navy Yard, Philadelphia, and the training of personnel for land flying began. The official designation of this organization was the Marine Aeronautic Company. Training in observation balloons was done in addition to the heavier-than-air work.

On 12 October 1917, this Marine Aeronautic Company, then consisting of 34 officers and 330 enlisted men, was divided into the 1st Aviation Squadron, consisting of 24 officers and 237 enlisted men, and the 1st Marine Aeronautic Company, consisting of 10 officers and 93 enlisted men. On 14 October 1917, the 1st Marine Aeronautic Company was transferred to Cape May, New Jersey, and took over the naval air station [there].

On 7 December 1917, the 1st Marine Aeronautic Company, then consisting of 12 officers and 133 enlisted men, was ordered to Naval Base 13, Ponta Delgada, Azores, arriving there on 21 January 1918. This company was the first completely equipped American aviation unit to leave the United States for service in the war. This organization

operated an antisubmarine patrol station of 10 [Curtiss] R-6 seaplanes, 2 [Curtiss] N-9 seaplanes, and later 6 [Curtiss] HS-2L flying boats until the station was ordered abandoned on 24 January 1919, when it was ordered to return to the United States, arriving at the Marine flying field, Miami, Florida, [on] 15 March 1919. Major Francis T. Evans was in command from 9 January to 18 July 1918, and Major David L. S. Brewster [was in command] from 19 July 1918 to 20 January 1919.

On 17 October 1917, the 1st Aviation Squadron was transferred from the Marine flying field, Navy Yard, Philadelphia, to the Army training field at Mineola, Long Island, where instruction and training were carried on in land flying. On 31 December 1917, this organization was transferred to Gerstner Field, Lake Charles, Louisiana, for advanced training.

In March 1918, the Marine flying field, Miami, Florida, was established and, on 31 March 1918, the 1st Aviation Squadron was transferred to that field from Lake Charles. Four Marine squadrons of land-fighting planes and a headquarters company were organized to operate under the Navy as the Day Wing of the Northern Bombing Group in northern France, which operated in the Dunkirk area [France] against German submarines and their bases [in Belgium] at Ostend, Zeebrugge, and Bruges.

On 13 July 1918, the 1st Marine Aviation Force, consisting of Squadrons A, B, C, and Headquarters Company, left Miami, and embarked onboard the *De Kalb* at New York City for France [on] 18 July 1918. This organization consisted of 107 officers and 654 enlisted men and, when Squadron D joined in October 1918, it consisted of 149 officers and 842 enlisted men. On 30 July 1918, the Day Wing disembarked at Brest, France, and proceeded to its aerodromes between Calais and Dunkirk, where they established camp and prepared the aerodromes for use. The personnel of the Day Wing were completely organized and ready for service two weeks after their arrival in France. Part of the planes and equipment of this organization arrived at Pauillac, France, before the organization reached France on 30 July 1918. On 28 September 1918, one plane was delivered to the Marine Day Wing. On 5 October 1918, Squadron D of the Day Wing, consisting of 42 officers and 188 enlisted

men, arrived at Le Franc aerodrome, completing the four squadrons of the Day Wing. During the month of October, additional planes were delivered to the Day Wing.

In order to prevent the personnel, who were completely trained and ready for action when they reached the front [on] 2 August 1918, from getting badly out of practice, the commanding officer [of the] Day Wing requested permission from the British aviation forces in the vicinity to be allowed to assign certain Marine pilots to operate with their squadrons until the Marine planes were delivered. As many Marine pilots as could be accommodated were operating with British squadrons until the end of the war, and were highly complimented by the British officers. The Day Wing carried out 14 independent raids far behind the enemy lines, did considerable damage, and brought back valuable information. The organization participated actively and creditably in both offensives on the Flanders front. It was learned after the armistice that one raid resulted in the death of 60 enemy officers and 300 enlisted men. A feat worthy of mention was performed by Marine Corps pilots. A French regiment was cut off by the enemy near Stadenburg. It was decided to attempt to feed them by [air]plane. Marine Corps pilots loaded up with food and flew low over this isolated regiment and successfully dropped 2,600 pounds of food to them in the face of heavy fire from artillery, machine guns, and rifles. This process was continued for two days until the regiment was extricated. The number of enemy planes brought down by Marine pilots, bombs dropped, food dropped, and other facts of a statistical nature are given elsewhere. Three pilots were killed or died of wounds received in action, two of them being shot down over the enemy's lines.

Major Alfred A. Cunningham commanded the Day Wing from the date of its organization to 7 December 1918, except the period 1-7 August 1918, during which time Major Roy S. Geiger was in command.

While in Europe, the Marine fliers served with 217 and 218 (bombing squadrons), Royal Air Force of England; and with pursuit, observation, and bombing squadrons of the French Flying Corps.

In February 1918, the Marine aviation section of 8 officers and 40 enlisted men was organized and stationed at Naval Air Station



Official U.S. Marine Corps photo

Then-2dLt Alfred A. Cunningham was detailed to the Philadelphia Navy Yard in February 1917 to establish, equip, and command Aviation Company for a Marine Corps Advanced Base Force and quickly sent to France. After its arrival in France, the company was designated the Northern Bombing Group and, in the three months it was stationed in Europe, the group operated at Oye, Le Fresne, Saint-Pol in France, and at Hondschoote, Ghistelles, Varsenare, and Knesselare in Belgium. Despite shortages in planes, spares (planes and equipment), and tools, the company performed 43 raids with the British and French, as well as 14 independent raids and shot down 8 enemy aircraft. The group also dropped 52,000 pounds of bombs and provided 2,600 pounds of supplies for the food-dropping missions in which it participated.

Miami. The personnel of this section was later increased and served at that station throughout the war, taking over the deep-sea scouting of that station. Captain Thomas R. Shearer was in command during the entire time.

### *Strength at Beginning and End of War*

The strength of Marine aviation on 6 April 1917 and on 11 November 1918 was as follows:

#### 6 April 1917

Commissioned officers	4
Warrant officer	1
Enlisted men	30
<b>Total</b>	<b>35</b>

#### 11 November 1918

Commissioned officers	250
Warrant officers	32
Enlisted men	2,180
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,462</b>

### *Stations*

The following are the stations at which Marine aviators operated, showing whether they operated independently, with the Navy, or with the Army:

<u>Independently</u>	<u>Navy</u>	<u>Army</u>
Marine Flying Field, Miami, FL	Marine Section, Naval Air Station, Miami, FL	Roosevelt Field, Mineola, NY
Balloon Company, Quantico, VA	Day Wing, Northern Bombing Group, France	Gerstner Field, Lake Charles, LA

Independently	Navy	Army
Naval Base No. 13, Azores	Naval Air Station, Pensacola, FL	Army Balloon Schools, St. Louis, MO Omaha, NE
Marine Flying Field, Philadelphia, PA		
Naval Air Station, Cape May, NJ		

### *Planes Operated by Marines*

The number of planes operated by Marine aviators at Pensacola on 6 April 1917 was four, and the type [was] A. H. Curtiss. On 11 November 1918, the following planes were operated by the personnel of Marine Aviation:

#### *Marine Flying Field, Miami*

De Havilland 4s, Curtiss JNs, Thomas-Morse Scouts, and M-1 defense planes	118
---	-----

#### *Naval Air Station Miami*

HS-1-L, and HS-2-L flying boats, and R-6 Curtiss seaplanes	24
--	----

#### *Balloon Company, Quantico*

N-9 and R-6 Seaplanes	3
Caquot and kite balloons	4

#### *Naval Base No 13, Azores*

R-6, N-9 seaplanes and HS-2-L and HS-1-L flying boats	18
---	----

#### *Northern Bombing Group, France*

De Haviland 4s and 9s	177
-----------------------	-----

At other times the following planes were operated by Marine pilots:

#### *Philadelphia, PA*

Curtiss JNs	6
Curtiss R-6s	2
Curtiss N-9s	2



<i>Roosevelt Field, Mineola</i>	
Army land planes	12
<i>Gerstner Field, Lake Charles</i>	
Army land planes	12
<i>Cape May Naval Air Station</i>	
R-6 and N-9 seaplanes	8
<b>Total planes operated by Marine pilots</b>	<b>386</b>

### *Training of Officers and Enlisted Men*

During the war, the Marine Corps selected and trained its own flyers and mechanics, and had its own aviation field and equipment. At the Massachusetts Institute of Technology [MIT], Boston, enlisted Marines selected as promising flying material and given the rank of gunnery sergeant took a 10-week course in groundwork, and about 80 men a month were graduated. After ground graduation, they did their actual flying at the Marine Flying Field, Miami. This course embraced preliminary, acrobatic, and formation flying, bombing, gunnery, and reconnaissance work, including photographing.

Upon qualifying, they were commissioned as second lieutenants in the Marine Corps Reserve Flying Corps. Marine flying candidates were all enlisted Marines of superior physique, weighing from 135 to 165 pounds, and with at least two years' college or university study to their credit. The age limits were 19–39 years. Marine Corps mechanics, riggers, and armorers were trained at the Marine Corps section of the naval school for mechanics, Great Lakes Training Station, Chicago, Illinois, the course covering eight weeks, and at a similar school in aviation mechanics at San Diego, California.

In December 1917, 2 Marine officers and 10 enlisted men were sent to the Army balloon school at St. Louis, Missouri, and later to Omaha, Nebraska, for training.

*Aviation Statistics*

Marine squadrons overseas in France	5
Total officers in France	165
Total enlisted men in France	895
Marine officers serving with Army Air Service, American Expeditionary Forces	6
Overseas, outside of France: Naval Base No. 13, Ponta Delgada, Azores	1 squadron, 12 officers, 135 enlisted men
Officers completely trained [and] ready for overseas aviation duty in the United States on 11 November 1918	100
Enlisted men completely trained [and] ready for overseas aviation duty in the United States on 11 November 1918	1,150
Number of squadrons and companies in United States on 11 November 1918	3
Total officers in United States on 11 November 1918	100
Total enlisted men in United States 11 November 1918	1,150
Total number of cadets under training (at all times)	225
Cadets completely trained (in all three branches) as bombers, chasse pilots, and seaplane fliers, total commissioned from 1 October 1918 to date	175
Raids participated in by Marine fliers serving with the British and French	43
Total number of bombing raids completely Marine	14
Total pounds of bombs dropped	52,000
Number of food raids	5
Pounds of food dropped	2,600
Number of enemy aircraft accounted for officially	12

*Return of Marine Aviators from Europe*

Early in December 1918, the Day Wing received orders to return to the United States, and embarked on 6 December 1918 onboard the [USS] *Mercury* [ID 3012] at Saint-Nazaire, France, arriving at Newport News, Virginia, [on] 21 December 1918. The 1st Marine Aeronautic Company returned from the Azores in March 1919, arriving at the Marine Flying Field, Miami, on 15 March 1919.

## CHAPTER XXII

### MARINE CORPS RESERVE

On 6 April 1917, the strength of the Marine Corps Reserve, all classes, was 36; the enlisted strength of the Naval Militia, Marine Corps Branch, of the various states was 928. On 1 April 1917, the Naval Militia, Marine Corps Branch, attained its highest strength [at] 1,046. There was no recruiting for the Naval Militia, Marine Corps Branch, after 1 April 1917 and, [as a] consequence, the enlisted personnel of that branch showed a steady decrease subsequent to that date, owing to discharges and rejections.

On 1 July 1918, the Naval Militia, Marine Corps Branch, then the National Naval Volunteers, Marine Corps Branch, consolidated with the Marine Corps Reserve in pursuance with the provisions of an act of Congress approved 1 July 1918 and, [as a] consequence thereof became members of Class 2, Marine Corps Reserve. On 16 November 1918, the Marine Corps Reserve attained its highest strength [at] 6,773.

#### *Strength on 11 November 1918*

The following table shows [the] strength of Marine Corps Reserve on active duty on 11 November 1918:

Majors	7
Captains	33
First lieutenants	63
Second lieutenants	360
<b>Total commissioned officers</b>	<b>463</b>

Marine gunners	27
Quartermaster clerks	2
Pay clerks	4
<b>Total warrant officers</b>	<b>33</b>
<hr/>	
Enlisted men	6,483
Female Reserves	277
<b>Total enlisted personnel</b>	<b>6,760</b>

*Strength of the Marine Corps Reserve*

Year	Total men (active)	Total men (inactive)	Women (active)	Women (inactive)	Total
<b>1917</b>					
1 April	35				35
1 May	424				424
1 June	885				885
1 July	1,096				1,096
1 August	1,167				1,167
1 September	1,186				1,186
1 October	1,210				1,210
1 November	1,202				1,202
1 December	1,341				1,341
<b>1918</b>					
1 January	1,531				1,531
1 February	2,514				2,514
1 March	4,106				4,106
1 April	4,745				4,745

Year	Total men (active)	Total men (inactive)	Women (active)	Women (inactive)	Total
1 May	4,780				4,780
1 June	4,950				4,950
1 July	5,211				5,211
1 August	6,378				6,378
1 September	6,453		31		6,484
1 October	6,402		145		6,547
1 November	6,467		240		6,707
1 December	6,440	42	269		6,751
<b>1919</b>					
1 January	5,820	588	260		6,668
1 February	5,022	1,301	255		6,578
1 March	4,392	1,910	246		6,548
1 April	3,555	2,684	234		6,473
1 May	3,064	3,041	229		6,334
1 June	2,871	3,179	238		6,288
1 July	2,410	3,502	226		6,138
1 August	2,186	3,694		201	6,081

Note: Empty cells indicate that no data was available.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### RETURN OF MARINES FROM EUROPE PARADES IN THE UNITED STATES

#### *Return of 2d Division and 4th Brigade*

A great many Marines returned from Europe gradually and in small detachments from the date the armistice became operative.

The commanding general of the 2d Division and his staff, headquarters of the 4th Brigade, the 5th Regiment, and the 2d Battalion of the 6th Regiment arrived in the United States onboard the *George Washington* on 3 August 1919; the remainder of the 6th Regiment arrived in the United States early in August 1919 onboard the [USS] *Rijndam* [ID 2505] and the [USS] *Wilhelmina* [ID 2168], the 6th Machine Gun Battalion arrived in the United States onboard the [USS] *Santa Paula* [ID 1590] on 5 August 1919.

#### *Return of the 5th Brigade*

The 5th Brigade Headquarters, the 13th Regiment (less Company B), and the 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion arrived in the United States onboard the *Siboney* on 8 August 1919. Company B of the 13th Regiment arrived on the [USS] *Mercury* [ID 3012] on 12 August 1919. The 11th Regiment arrived in the United States onboard the [USS] *Orizaba* [ID 1536] on 9 August 1919. All the above Marine organizations and individuals were returned to the naval service soon after arrival in the United States.

### *Composite Regiment, Third Army*

The company of Marines and [the] battalion commander (major) and staff, forming a part of the Composite Regiment, Third Army, returned to the United States onboard the *Leviathan* on 8 September 1919, and were returned to the naval service in September 1919.

The colonel commanding the Composite Regiment in a letter dated 21 September 1919 commended the battalion commander and staff, the commanding officer of the company, and “the lieutenants for their loyalty and attention to details, and noncommissioned officers and men for their soldierly appearance, high standard of morale, and discipline,” concluding with these words:

The Composite Regiment paraded as escort to the general of the Army, in London, Paris, New York, and Washington, DC. The regiment has been favorably commended. This is entirely due to the loyalty, energy, and attention to duty of the officers and individual soldiers in the regiment; and in this, the Marine Corps representatives deserve a large share.

### *Schleswig-Holstein Battalion*

With the return of the above Marine organizations, all Marines of the American Expeditionary Forces were out of Europe with the exception of a few individuals, and the 15th Separate Battalion, consisting of 26 officers and about 700 enlisted men, which was retained for duty in France for possible operations in connection with the Schleswig-Holstein plebiscite [vote].

This battalion, under command of Major Charles F. B. Price, was organized at Camp Pontanezen, Brest, in July 1919 from personnel of the 4th and 5th Brigades and the 12th Separate Battalion. The battalion designation was changed on 15 August from “Provisional Battalion, U.S. Marines,” to the “15th Separate Battalion.”

The battalion rendered honors to General Pershing on 1 September 1919, upon his departure from France at Brest and on the same day was inspected by Marshal Foch, who commended the battalion on its splendid appearance. Leaving Brest on the *Mercury* [on] 3 September 1919, the battalion arrived six days later at Bordeaux to take part in the ceremony of laying a foundation for a monu-



ment commemorating the entrance of the United States into the [First] World War at Pointe de Grave near Bordeaux, France. It then returned to Brest and, in December, went onboard the [USS] *Henderson* [AP 1], then at that port. The *Henderson*, with the battalion onboard, sailed from Brest, arriving at Philadelphia on 23 December 1919 after a 16-day trip. On 30 December 1919, the battalion arrived at Quantico.

### *Return of Aviation Units*

Information regarding the return of Marine Corps aviation units from Europe will be found in chapter XXI.

### *Parades in the United States*

On 8 August 1919, the 4th Brigade, as a part of the 2d Division, paraded in New York City. Major General John A. Lejeune, with many Marine officers on his staff, was in command. On 8 August 1919, the 4th Brigade was transferred to the naval service upon its arrival at Quantico.

On 12 August 1919, the 4th Brigade, then a part of the naval service, was reviewed by the president of the United States in a parade at Washington, DC. Brigadier General Wendell C. Neville was in command.

A company of Marines and a battalion commander, as a part of the Third Army Composite Regiment, paraded in New York and in Washington, DC, as escort to General Pershing. The 1st Division also formed a part of these parades.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### DEMOBILIZATION

**I**mmediately upon the armistice becoming operative on 11 November 1918, the question of demobilization became one of paramount importance. It was necessary that plans be at once put into effect, providing for the release from service at the earliest possible (date of duration-of-war men and reservists. While authority existed to hold such men for several months after the ratification of the peace treaty, the popular demand for the return and discharge of all who could be spared was only natural. Parents, relatives, and friends could see no necessity for the keeping of their loved ones in the Service after actual fighting ceased.

The problem before the Marine Corps was serious, as a [full-] scale reduction at that time would have seriously crippled its efficiency. Therefore, on 20 November 1918, in Marine Corps Orders No. 56, orders were issued to the Service stating that it was the desire of headquarters to release those members of the Marine Corps Reserve and those men of the Regular Service, who enlisted for the duration of the war, who wished to complete their education, or who had urgent family and business interests demanding immediate and personal attention. Thus demobilization, to a limited extent, was begun nine days after the signing of the armistice.

On 1 May 1919, it became necessary, owing to the demands of the Service and the reduction of the enlisted personnel, to temporarily limit the privilege of discharge to men whose release was necessary for urgent financial dependency reasons.

Following the approval of the act of 11 July 1919, which provided sufficient funds to sustain the Corps only at an average enlisted strength of 27,400 men, with corresponding officers, Marine Corps Orders No. 42, 12 July 1919, was published, establishing demobilization centers and promulgating detailed instructions for the complete demobilization. Under this plan, duration-of-war men were discharged as rapidly as the exigencies of the Service permitted. Those men serving in the "tropics," who were eligible for discharge and desired their release, were returned to the United States as rapidly as practicable, and orders were issued for their discharge and awaited them at the time of joining a Marine barracks, thus minimizing delay in allowing them to go home. By the latter part of December 1919, practically all of the duration-of-war personnel had been discharged.

In August 1919, the 4th and 5th Brigades, which had been serving with the Army in France, were returned to the Marine Barracks Quantico and the Naval Operating Base, Hampton Roads, Virginia, respectively, at which places the demobilization of these two organizations was effected. This undertaking was by far the largest and most important of its kind that had ever confronted the Marine Corps but, due to the coordination of the various departments interested and the far-reaching and clearly defined instructions issued in advance the demobilization of these units, was effected in a remarkably short time, being completed on 13 August 1919, and in a manner bringing satisfaction to the men discharged, and reflecting to the credit of the Corps. The success of these efforts is evidenced by the following statement of demobilization:

Discharged or transferred to inactive status:

4th Brigade, 6,677 enlisted men

5th Brigade, 6,671 enlisted men

In addition to the enlisted men released, there were also about 200 officers of the two brigades who were either discharged or transferred to an inactive status. Due to the diligent cooperation of those concerned, the demobilization was carried out with a degree of success far beyond expectations.

*Marines Are Welcomed Home by the Navy*

Acting Secretary Roosevelt, [on] 11 August 1919, sent to all ships and stations of the United States Navy the following special order:

The Fourth Brigade of the Marine Corps, consisting of the Fifth Regiment, Sixth Regiment, and the Sixth Machine Gun Battalion, and the Fifth Brigade of the Marine Corps, consisting of the Eleventh Regiment, Thirteenth Regiment, and Fifth Brigade Machine Gun Battalion, have returned from service in Europe and have reverted from the Army to their status in the United States Navy. At this time I wish, on behalf of the naval service, to welcome them back and express to the officers and men of these organizations the very deep appreciation of the Navy for their splendid services while with the Army during the war.

Beginning with the first expeditionary forces, which left the United States in June 1917, over 30,000 officers and men of the Marine Corps have been sent to France. The Fourth Brigade, as a part of the immortal Second Division, has been engaged in all of the principal operations of the war. Their record speaks for itself. The Fifth Brigade, going to France later, furnished many splendidly trained replacements for the Fourth Brigade and performed arduous tasks according to tradition.

The entire Navy welcomes them home.

FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT,  
Acting Secretary of the Navy

*The Secretary of War Praises the 4th Brigade*

WAR DEPARTMENT, August 12, 1919

Hon. JOSEPHUS DANIELS,

Secretary of the Navy

MY DEAR MR. SECRETARY: In the process of demobilization, the Marine Brigade, which by the President's order became a part of the American Expeditionary Forces and was thus a part of the forces under the control of the War Department and under the command of General Pershing, has now been returned to this country, detached from the Army, and restored to the control of the Navy Department.

I cannot permit this heroic force to terminate its association with the Army without expressing to you, and through you to the officers and men of the Marine Corps, the deep sentiment of the War Department and of the Army toward it. The whole history of the Brigade in France is one of conspicuous service; when it was finally incorporated into the Second Division of the American Army it had early an opportunity to give a heroic demonstration of the unconquerable tenacity and dauntless courage of American soldiers. From then on in successive, almost continuous, battles the Marine Brigade and the division of which it was a part fought sternly and successfully until victory was obtained for the Allied Armies. Throughout this long contest the Marines, both by their valor and their tragic losses, heroically sustained added an imperishable chapter to the history of America's participation in the World War.

On behalf of the Army I congratulate the Navy Department, the Major General commanding the Marines, those who have been instrumental in the formation and training of this splendid organization, and the officers and men of the organization itself.

Cordially yours,  
NEWTON D. BAKER

In reply, Acting Secretary Roosevelt said:

NAVY DEPARTMENT, August 13, 1919  
Hon. NEWTON D. BAKER,  
Secretary of War, Washington, DC

DEAR MR. SECRETARY: Your very cordial letter and the tribute it bore to the Fourth Brigade of Marines was received with pleasure and deepest appreciation. The heroism of the Marines and the Regulars in the famous Second Division and their sacrifices have endeared them to all Americans and it is with very pardonable pride that we welcome them back to the Navy.

The spirit of cordial cooperation between the Army and the Navy was never better manifested than in the participation of these Marines in the great battles in France under the command of General Pershing as a part of the United States Army, and shoulder-to-shoulder with units of the Regular Army. It is with extreme gratification that we can look back upon this unbroken cooperation between our two departments that started at the time the first Navy ship carried troops to France and continued uninterruptedly through to the end.

On behalf of Secretary Daniels, the Commandant of the Marine Corps, the officers and men of that organization, I wish to thank you for the sentiments expressed in your letter and convey to you our appreciation of the heroism of the officers and men of the Army who with the Marines made the Second Division one of the greatest fighting organizations the world has ever known.

It is very gratifying in our pride over the achievements of the Marines, to know that that pride is shared by the War Department and your warm approbation of their conduct as a part of the Army will be treasured by the Corps as well as by the individuals.

Sincerely yours,  
FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT,  
Acting Secretary of the Navy

## CHAPTER XXV

### OFFICE OF THE MAJOR GENERAL COMMANDANT ADJUTANT AND INSPECTOR'S DEPARTMENT

**M**ajor General Commandant George Barnett was the Major General Commandant of the United States Marine Corps during the entire period of the [First] World War. Originally appointed on 25 February 1914, he was reappointed on 25 February 1918 for a second term of four years.

On 29 September 1918, Major General Commandant George Barnett, accompanied by Brigadier General Charles L. McCawley, sailed from New York onboard the *Leviathan*, arriving at Brest, France, [on] 7 October 1918. The object of the visit of the Major General Commandant to France was an inspection of all the Marines serving with the American Expeditionary Forces, but he fell victim to the influenza epidemic, which prevented him from carrying out his plans. He departed from Paris [on] 7 December 1918, sailed from Brest [on] 9 December 1918 onboard the *Leviathan*, and arrived in the United States [on] 16 December 1918.

Brigadier General John A. Lejeune was the assistant to the Major General Commandant from 14 December 1914 to 26 September 1917 when he was transferred to Quantico to command the Marine barracks. Brigadier General Charles G. Long relieved Brigadier General Lejeune and has acted as assistant to the Major General Commandant from that date to the present.

Activities directly under the office of the Major General Commandant, such as personnel, target practice, and aviation, were carried on efficiently during the war. The Planning Section was established on 24 December 1918.

Brigadier General Charles H. Lauchheimer was the adjutant and inspector of the United States Marine Corps, with station at Headquarters, during the [First] World War. He became seriously ill [and] was admitted to the hospital on 10 July 1919, where he died on 14 January 1920. Colonel Henry C. Haines assumed the duties of acting adjutant and inspector on 3 August 1919 and, upon the death of Brigadier General Lauchheimer, was appointed the adjutant and inspector. A great amount of additional work was caused by the large increases and by the war, but the personnel of the Adjutant and Inspector's Department performed their duties with efficient satisfaction.



## CHAPTER XXVI

### PAYMASTER'S DEPARTMENT

**B**rigadier General George Richards was the paymaster of the United States Marine Corps, stationed at Headquarters, during the entire period of the war.

#### *Strength and Distribution*

The commissioned, warranted, appointed, and enlisted personnel of the Paymaster's Department at the beginning of the war consisted of:

Permanent commissioned paymasters	6
Officers of the grade of captain detailed for four years	3
Officers appointed as special disbursing agents under Revised Statutes 3614	4
Permanent pay clerks	9
Civil force	3
Enlisted men	51
<b>Total force</b>	<b>76</b>

The above force was distributed as shown in the following table:

Pay stations	Personnel attached						
	Number and rank of commissioned officers	Pay clerks	Quartermaster sergeants	Sergeants	Corporals	Privates	Total
<i>U.S. offices</i>							
Headquarters, Washington, DC	1 brigadier, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 1 first lieutenant	4 3*	4	5	2	6	28
San Francisco, CA	1 major	1	1	2	1	1	7
New York, NY	1 captain	1	3	3	2	4	14
<i>Outside U.S. offices</i>							
Peking, China	1 captain^		1				2
Virgin Islands	1 captain^		1				2
Port au Prince, Haiti	1 first lieutenant		1	1	1	1	5
Cap Haitien, Haiti	1 captain^		1		1		3
Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic	1 captain	1	1		1		4
Santiago, Dominican Republic	1 captain	1	2	1		3	8
Managua, Nicaragua	1 second lieutenant		1				2
Unassigned		1					1
<b>Total</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>76</b>

\* Civil.

^Special disbursing agent.

The commissioned force of the paymaster's department reached a maximum strength of 47 officers, including special disbursing agents, when the latest detail to the department from the line was made and, as then constituted, consisted of:

Permanently commissioned paymasters	5
Officers detailed from the prewar line	9
Temporary officers (Eight former pay clerks and four temporary line officers)	12
Officers of the Reserve force	16
Officers appointed as special disbursing agents	5
Permanent pay clerk	1
Temporary pay clerks	58
Pay clerks of the Reserve force	6
Enlisted men	501
<b>Total</b>	<b>613</b>

The above force, which was the maximum authorized complement of the paymaster's department, was distributed as follows:

Pay stations	Personnel attached							
	Number and rank of commissioned officers	Pay clerks	Quartermaster sergeants	Sergeants	Corporals	Privates first class	Privates	Total
<i>U.S. offices</i>								
Headquarters, Washington, DC*	1 brigadier, 4 majors, 5 captains	22	27	37	55	22	67	240
New York, NY (established May 1908)	2 majors, 1 captain	2	5	5	5	2	8	30
Philadelphia, PA (established May 1917)	1 colonel, 1 captain	2	2	2	2	1	3	14
Quantico, VA (established June 1917)	1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 2 captains	4	5	8	8	3	13	45

Pay stations	Personnel attached							
	Number and rank of commissioned officers	Pay clerks	Quartermaster sergeants	Sergeants	Corporals	Privates first class	Privates	Total
<i>U.S. offices</i>								
Atlanta, GA (established June 1917)	1 captain	3	3	3	4	2	6	22
San Francisco, CA (established March 1901)	1 captain	2	2	3	3		3	14
<i>Outside U.S. offices</i>								
Expeditionary Forces, France	4 majors, 12 captains	20	34	34	31	9	39	183
7th Regiment, Cuba	1 captain	1	1	1	2		1	7
1st Regiment, Cuba	1 captain	1	1	1	2		1	7
San Domingo, Dominican Republic	1 captain	1	1	2	2		1	8
Santiago, Dominican Republic	1 captain	1	1	1	2		1	7
Port au Prince, Haiti	1 special disbursing agent	1	1	1	1			15
Cap Haitien, Haiti	1 special disbursing agent		1		1		1	4
St. Thomas, Virgin Islands	1 special disbursing agent	1	1					3
Managua, Nicaragua	1 special disbursing agent		1					2

Peking, China	1 special disbursing agent		1					2
Attached to posts in the United States and elsewhere	1 captain	4	15					20
<b>Total</b>	<b>47</b>	<b>65</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>98</b>	<b>118</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>144</b>	<b>613</b>

\*Authorized complement but never filled. Maximum number of employed in paymaster's office at any time was, subsequent to 6 April 1917, approximately 208 of all grades and ranks.

### *How War Increases Were Met*

The enlargement of the paymaster's department to meet war conditions at the beginning of the war, and until the enlisted strength was raised to 75,500, was effected in the following manner:

1. By the temporary appointment and advancement to the grade of captain, pursuant to act of 22 May 1919, of eight of the permanent pay clerks of the department.
2. By the temporary advancement of enlisted men of experience and long service under this department to the grade of pay clerk.
3. The new enlisted clerical personnel was partly obtained from enlisted men who had previously been employed as payroll clerks at shore stations and aboard ships of the Navy and from men enlisted and enrolled from civil life with clerical experience outside. The men obtained were detailed in the regularly established offices, and there formed into classes for instruction in their duties, [with] the commissioned officers and senior clerks being used as instructors for this purpose. In addition to the above, and to the end of creating a proper spirit and morale, and bringing about a better understanding throughout the department of its aims and purposes, a series of lectures by the paymaster and subordinate officers was delivered at Headquarters and afterward published and distributed to the entire personnel of the department. Later on, in order to meet the further increased demand for clerical assistance, a school for the instruction of men in paymaster's department work

was established at the Marine Barracks Parris Island. This was, however, in addition to the system of instruction previously instituted in the permanently established offices. The school was of considerable value in that it aided in the selection and assignment of men (recruits) with previous clerical experience to duty in the paymaster's department. The demand for clerks for both home and overseas service, however, was so great for some time before the close of the war that it was not possible at any time to keep the men under instruction in the school or in the offices for sufficient length of time to complete the prescribed course that had been laid out for them. As a consequence, many men had to be sent out with but a meager idea of the duties they were to perform. The clerical forces of the permanent offices, therefore, finally became so drained of experienced clerks and stenographers taken away to supply the demand for expeditionary and overseas forces that it became necessary to enlist or enroll women to perform these duties.

*Money Expended*

The amount of money expended for pay and allowances for each month from April 1917 to December 1918 follows:

Month	Officers	Enlisted	Total
1917			
April	\$ 143,698.37	\$ 357,398.60	\$ 501,094.97
May	\$ 176,742.19	\$ 413,019.82	\$ 589,762.01
June	\$ 201,977.79	\$ 565,677.22	\$ 767,655.01
July	\$ 220,884.23	\$ 989,495.53	\$ 1,210,379.76
August	\$ 280,038.19	\$ 1,196,082.09	\$ 1,476,120.28
September	\$ 269,160.66	\$ 1,137,790.16	\$ 1,406,950.82
October	\$ 332,859.49	\$ 1,244,965.55	\$ 1,577,825.04
November	\$ 378,458.48	\$ 1,266,138.57	\$ 1,644,597.05
December	\$ 350,098.46	\$ 1,353,510.60	\$ 1,703,609.06

1918			
January	\$ 328,517.81	\$ 1,322,724.98	\$ 1,651,242.79
February	\$ 337,407.35	\$ 1,441,099.32	\$ 1,778,506.67
March	\$ 369,298.24	\$ 1,321,933.64	\$ 1,691,231.88
April	\$ 373,395.58	\$ 1,313,210.75	\$ 1,686,606.33
May	\$ 378,551.77	\$ 1,815,309.63	\$ 2,193,861.40
June	\$ 385,042.99	\$ 1,856,344.35	\$ 2,241,387.34
July	\$ 441,838.15	\$ 2,124,134.76	\$ 2,565,972.91
August	\$ 515,273.26	\$ 2,436,318.86	\$ 2,951,592.12
September	\$ 572,721.39	\$ 2,322,089.79	\$ 2,894,811.18
October	\$ 522,995.22	\$ 2,503,312.62	\$ 3,026,307.84
November	\$ 648,615.69	\$ 2,597,542.71	\$ 3,246,158.40
December	\$ 597,142.61	\$ 2,545,932.41	\$ 3,143,075.02
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 7,824,717.92</b>	<b>\$ 32,124,031.96</b>	<b>\$ 39,948,747.88</b>

### *Additional Duties During War*

The duties of the paymaster's department during the war were greatly enlarged and made more complicated and difficult: (1) By reason of the enactment of the War Risk Insurance Act of 6 October 1917. The work connected with family allotments and war risk insurance created by this act was of such magnitude as to require the establishment of a separate administrative section under a commissioned officer to handle the voluminous correspondence, keep the records, and make proper audit of these items in the accounts involved. It was also found necessary in order to facilitate the work of this section that a liaison group of clerks be kept in the War Risk Bureau. (2) By reason of the taking over of the payment of all Marine Corps allotments, as the deputy of the Navy allotment officer. (3) By reason of the necessity of having to pay many men on affidavits without proper records; service record books and other papers pertaining to their accounts having been lost or destroyed by operation of war or other accidental circumstances. (4) By reason of the large number

of wounded men, some of whom were scattered in various hospitals throughout France, and others of whom were returned to the United States without due notice to military authorities and sent to both naval, military, and civil hospitals at widely scattered points throughout the States. In but a few of these cases were there any records on which full and accurate payments could be made. Hence a system of emergency, or casual payments as they were called, was established both in France and in the United States.

The absence of records in these cases was not the worst feature, however, but the absence of any information as to the whereabouts of the men made it at first impossible to locate some of them and effect regular payments.

However, after the first few months' experience with the handling of payments to the wounded, a system was devised by which most of those returning to the states were immediately reported and prompt payments were thereafter made. A similar system of emergency or casual payments to wounded men was adopted by the department in France, but wounded men in France were evacuated so frequently from one hospital to another that no system of reporting was practicable. Each hospital there had to be visited in person by a paymaster at least once a month and such wounded Marines as were found had to be paid on their own representations a sum sufficient to meet their immediate needs. Under such a system, some necessarily went without pay for some time, while others more fortunate in meeting a paymaster at frequent intervals received at times more money than was properly due them. (5) By reason of the enactment of 24 February 1919, providing a gratuity of \$60 to all persons in the military and naval forces of the United States, who were discharged under honorable conditions at any time subsequent to 6 April 1917. This law necessitated the establishment at headquarters of a claims section, whose sole duty was to settle the 20,000 or 30,000 supplementary claims created by this act and the act of 28 February 1919, increasing the amount of travel allowance to 5 cents per mile to all enlisted men discharged subsequent to 11 November 1918.



### *New Pay Roll*

In addition to the above, it became necessary to adopt a new pay roll suitable for preparation on the typewriter and so arranged as to make it adaptable for use as a combination pay and muster roll, should this be deemed necessary. This roll was prescribed and put into use in the midst of the war without much confusion, and it is understood resulted in a saving of much clerical labor to the organization commanders.

### *Office of the Chief Paymaster, U.S. Marines, France*

In obedience to orders dated 2 October 1917, and in compliance with provisions of G. H. Q. General Orders No. 38(2), 17 September 1917, the "Office of the Chief Paymaster, U.S. Marines France," was established in Paris, France, on 5 October 1917. Major Davis B. Wills was chief paymaster, U.S. Marines, France, from that date until the office was abolished in August 1919.

## CHAPTER XXVII

### QUARTERMASTER'S DEPARTMENT

**B**rigadier General Charles L. McCawley was the quartermaster of the United States Marine Corps, with station at Headquarters, during the entire war. Brigadier General McCawley, in company with the Major General Commandant, sailed from the United States onboard the *Leviathan* [on] 29 September 1918, arriving at Brest, France, [on] 7 October 1918. After an extended visit to the Marines as an observer, Brigadier General McCawley sailed from Brest onboard the *De Kalb* [on] 9 December 1918, arriving in the United States [on] 16 December 1918.

Upon the increase of the Marine Corps from 17,400 to 30,000 and later to 75,500, it became necessary to increase the commissioned, warrant, and enlisted personnel of the Quartermaster's Department in order that it might successfully meet the heavy demands made upon it by the war and by the large increase in strength.

The increase in the commissioned personnel was made largely by the promotion of experienced quartermaster clerks and quartermaster sergeants to commissioned rank, and the vacancies in the grade of quartermaster sergeant were filled, as far as possible, from selected enlisted men.

Later, a school for the instruction of quartermaster sergeants was organized at Marine Barracks Norfolk, and three classes were graduated therefrom.

It was necessary to make large increases in the personnel at Headquarters to handle the question of supply, transportation, con-

struction, and finance. The table below shows the strength in the office of the quartermaster on 1 January 1917 and 30 June 1918:

Grade	1 January 1917	30 June 1918
Commissioned officers	4	9
Warrant officers		12
Special assistant		1
Technical engineer		1
Clerical force:		
Civilians	10	8
Enlisted (Regular)	43	53
Enlisted (Reserve)		111
<b>Total</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>195</b>

### *Additional Storehouses and Cooperation with Government Agencies*

Due to changes in the method of purchasing rations caused by existing conditions, it became necessary to establish commissary storehouses at San Francisco, Charleston, and Baltimore, at which to maintain reserve supply stores. The Baltimore storehouse was later moved to Philadelphia. At the beginning of the war, the Marine Corps had in its depots at Philadelphia, and [at] San Francisco, a small surplus stock, which had been accumulated from the regular appropriations, sufficient to outfit 8,500 men; consequently, when war was declared against Germany and the Corps was increased, first to 1,323 officers and 30,000 men (act 22 May 1917), and secondly to 3,341 officers and 75,500 men (act 1 July 1918), it was necessary to provide simultaneously clothing, equipage, food, and

shelter for these men. The question of shelter is discussed in the following pages. In connection with the purchase of these supplies, it must be remembered that the Army, Navy, and Allies were in the market for similar articles and, in order to determine supply and allocate demands, the president first appointed a Council of National Defense, which was later superseded by the War Industries Board. The Quartermaster's Department had representatives in daily attendance at the various meetings of the committees of the Council of National Defense, and later the War Industries Board.

All of the above-mentioned supplies, as far as practicable, were purchased in the usual manner by the bid and tender plan, only those articles on which no bids were received or those controlled by the War Industries Board being allocated. There was installed in the office of the quartermaster a "follow-up" system, where record was made of all orders, contracts, purchase orders, and requests for transfer of supplies from other departments. The function of this section was to see that the supplies were delivered in accordance with contract obligations and trace delinquent deliveries. The section has proven its value, and satisfactory deliveries have been obtained with few exceptions. From these records, the quartermaster has available at all times the status of all outstanding orders as well as a concise record of completed contracts.

### *Cantonments*

To furnish accommodations for the increased personnel, cantonments on a large scale were built at Quantico and Parris Island [South Carolina], and on a smaller scale at Mare Island [California]. This work was expeditiously handled and afforded suitable temporary accommodations during the war.

### *Depot of Supplies, Philadelphia*

During the period of the war, the depot outfitted and equipped 36 expeditionary units for service in France and the West Indies, and over 31 million pounds of various kinds of supplies were shipped on government bills of lading. The depot departments were so organized that it was only necessary to expand each division of the office

forces and increase the number of employees and machines in the manufacturing departments in order to meet the increased demands during the war. The personnel of the depot on 30 June 1919 was as follows: 13 commissioned officers, 7 warrant officers, 2 civilians, 102 enlisted men of the Regular Service, 21 reservists, and 1,095 other employees of all classes, making a total personnel of 1,240.

### *Depot of Supplies, San Francisco, California*

The activities of this depot were increased during the war by the greater number of recruits to be outfitted on the West Coast, and by the establishment of the subsistence branch of the depot at San Francisco. This depot has supplied all posts on the West Coast, and furnished the supplies for the troops in the Orient.

### *Depot of Supplies, Charleston, South Carolina*

This depot was established soon after the declaration of war for the purpose of supplying all posts south of Norfolk, including the West Indies. The storage facilities consist of 7 warehouses and a total floor space of 124,778 square feet. A total of about 14,287 tons of stores were shipped from this depot during the fiscal year 1919, these stores being valued at approximately \$12 million; during the same period, approximately 18,000 tons of stores were received at an estimated value of \$15 million. Practically all shipments of supplies of every description for troops in the West Indies are made from this depot.

### *Expenditures*

The expenditures of the Quartermaster's Department for the fiscal years ending 30 June 1917, 1918, and 1919, were as shown below, exclusive of appropriations for public works under the Navy Department, from which figures the enormous increase in the activities and responsibilities of this department caused by the war and by the increase in strength is evident:

Subhead	1917	1918	1919
Provisions	\$ 1,612,908.30	\$ 6,725,893.05	\$10,287,965.53
Clothing	\$ 2,173,501.59	\$ 11,123,760.36	\$ 20,275,456.01
Fuel	\$ 248,606.82	\$ 590,120.91	\$ 989,573.08
Military stores	\$ 1,520,289.39	\$ 6,371,978.10	\$ 13,952,476.49
Camps of instruction	\$ 31,871.04	\$ 30,945.83	-
Transportation and recruiting	\$ 620,667.75	\$ 1,514,657.77	\$ 3,064,099.21
Repairs of barracks	\$ 216,715.56	\$ 3,754,241.58	\$ 5,883,065.69
Forage	\$ 75,018.94	\$ 161,614.81	\$ 163,132.90
Commutation of quarters	\$ 164,497.24	\$ 402,402.51	\$ 363,484.53
Contingent	\$ 983,984.91	\$ 4,864,825.25	\$ 8,674,269.61
Expenditures under appropriation "Reserve Supplies, USMC"	-	-	\$ 2,510,527.44
Purchases under second deficiency act from United States Army	-	-	\$ 772,540.00
<b>Total maintenance Quartermasters Department</b>	<b>\$ 7,648,061.54</b>	<b>\$ 35,540,440.17</b>	<b>\$66,936,590.49</b>

- Figures not available.

# APPENDIX I

## MARINE CORPS DEATHS

*Total Marine Corps Deaths  
during the Period of the First World War*

<b>Character</b>	<b>Officers</b>	<b>Enlisted men</b>	<b>Total</b>
Killed in action	45	1,409	1,454
Died of wounds	33	974	1,007
Died of disease	25	676	269
Died of other causes	15	107	122
<b>Total</b>	<b>118</b>	<b>3,166</b>	<b>3,284</b>

Note: the revised casualty statistics above reflect recalculations following the period during which research for the monograph was completed.

## APPENDIX II

### BIOGRAPHIES OF SELECTED MARINE CORPS LEADERS

#### *Major General Charles D. Barrett*

Charles Dodson Barrett was born on 16 August 1885 in Henderson, Kentucky. He later moved to Virginia, after which he was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 11 August 1909. On 10 September 1909, Barrett was ordered to report to the Commandant of the Marine Corps at Headquarters for assignment to duty at Marine Officers' School Port Royal, South Carolina, for instruction.

Barrett joined Marine Barracks Boston, Massachusetts, on 18 January 1911. He detached on 23 May to report to the superintendent of the U.S. Naval Academy, Annapolis, Maryland, to command Marine detachment of the USS *Indiana* (BB 1) and later detached 29 August 1911 to the USS *New Jersey* (BB 16), which he joined on 2 September 1911. Barrett landed with the detachment from the *New Jersey* at Vera Cruz, Mexico, on 22 April 1914 and participated in the capture of that city. He detached from the *New Jersey* on 13 December 1914 to Marine Barracks Norfolk, Virginia.

Following expeditionary duty in Mexico and until the break out of World War I, he served at various posts in the United States and, in the fall of 1917, served as aide-de-camp to the Major General Commandant at Headquarters Marine Corps, after being promoted to captain on 12 April 1917. In addition to the foreign duty in Mexico in 1914, he participated in World War I overseas in France in 1918–19 and later in 1921, while he served on foreign expeditionary duty in Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic. He was promoted to major on 2 May 1921.

Following his arrival in France, Barrett served in the foreign shore expeditionary service, including detached duty with the U.S. Army on 25 September 1918. He participated in the Meuse-Argonne offensive and assignment to the staff of the commanding general. In spring 1919, he was in command of the 2d Battalion,



367th Infantry, at Le Mans, France, detaching in April and reported to the commanding general, 4th Brigade.

Upon returning to the United States, Barrett served in Washington, DC, with the American Battle Monuments Commission from 1924 to 1927, and was a student at the École de Guerre in Paris from 1927 to 1929. He was on duty at Headquarters Marine Corps, Division of Operations and Training, from 1933 to 1935. Barrett served as a division Marine officer with the Fleet during 1935–36, and was on duty in the Office of the Chief of Naval Operations from 1937 to 1939. He commanded the 5th Marines, 1st Marine Brigade, from August 1939 to June 1940, when he was detached to duty as the director of Division of Plans and Policies, Headquarters Marine Corps, and later as Assistant to the Commandant of the Marine Corps.

On 29 May 1934, Barrett was promoted to lieutenant colonel and, on March 1937, was promoted to colonel. He was commissioned brigadier general on 10 January 1942, to rank from 8 December 1941. In March 1942, Barrett assumed command of the 3d Marine Brigade and served at a South Pacific post, returning to the United States in September 1942 to assume command of the 3d Marine Division. He was appointed major general on 26 August 1942. Barrett died on 10 June 1963 at the U.S. Naval Hospital. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery with full military honors.

### *Brigadier General Hiram I. Bearss*

Hiram Iddings Bearss was born on 13 April 1875 in Indiana. He was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps (for the war with Spain) on 27 May 1898, and was honorably discharged on 21 February 1899. On 26 May 1899, he was promoted to first lieutenant; promoted to captain on 23 July 1900; promoted to major on 16 May 1915; appointed a lieutenant colonel on 29 August 1916; and to colonel (temporary) on 1 July 1918.

Early in his career, Bearss served in the Philippine Islands from December 1899 to May 1902. During this period, he served with Major Littleton W. T. Waller's battalion in Samar from October 1901 to March 1902. Later, he served in Panama from December 1903 to March 1904; in Cuba from February to April 1913; in Mexico from April to August 1914, during which period he participated in the occupation of Vera Cruz and the engagement incident that followed; and in Santo Domingo from June 1916 to May 1917.

During World War I, Bearss served with distinction in various capacities. He arrived in France on 20 August 1917 and was in command of the Base Detachment, 5th Regiment, until 7 September 1917, and was commander of Base Section No. 2 (Headquarters at Bordeaux) from 8 September to 25 October 1917. He was then assigned command of the 5th Regiment, serving from 30 October 1917 to 31 December 1917, and served as second in command of 5th Regiment from 1 January 1918 to 26 February 1918, when he was temporarily assigned to command of a battalion of the 9th Infantry. He commanded the 3d Battalion, 9th Infantry, in the Toulon-Troyon sector southeast of Verdun, France. He was detailed to duty at 2d Division Headquarters on 1 May 1918. During his tour of duty at Division Headquarters, he was assistant provost marshal and commanding officer of Headquarters Troops and APO 710. He was relieved from this duty on 13 June 1918 and assigned to the 6th Regiment as second in command.

On 24 August 1918, Bearss was reassigned to the 26th Division for duty as a regimental commander. He commanded the 102d Infantry Regiment from 26 August 1918 to 14 October 1918, from 25 October 1918 to 8 November 1918, and from 24 November 1918 to 7 December 1918. He commanded the 51st Infantry Brigade, 26th

Division, from 15 to 24 October 1918 and from 9 to 23 November 1918. His tour of service with the 26th Division included the Rupt sector (Lorraine), the Saint-Mihiel Operation, Troyon sector (Lorraine), and the Meuse-Argonne Operation. In the Saint-Mihiel Operation, he commanded the leading elements of the 51st Brigade in a bold and successful march southeast from the Rupt sector through Dommartin-la-Montagne, the Grande Tranchée de Calonne, Vigneulles-lès-Hattonchâtel and established contact with the 1st Division, which was advancing from the south, and thus completed the reduction of the Saint-Mihiel salient.

Bearss was placed on the retired list as a colonel on 22 November 1919 by reason of physical disability incident to his service, and was advanced to the rank of brigadier general on the retired list on 16 January 1936 by reason of having been specially commended for heroism in combat in World War I. He died on 27 August 1938 and is buried in Ridgeview, Indiana.

*Brigadier General David L. S. Brewster*

David Lukins Shoemaker Brewster was born in Washington, DC, on 31 December 1887. Brewster was commissioned a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps in December 1910, after completing a preparatory course at the Army and Naval Academy in Washington, DC. He advanced to first lieutenant in September 1916, to captain in March 1917, to major in June 1922, to lieutenant colonel in June 1935, to colonel in May 1940, and to brigadier general in April 1943.

On his first command assignment in 1917, he was in charge of Marine Barracks Pensacola, Florida. Qualified to pilot airplanes, dirigibles, and balloons, Brewster was designated a naval aviator in September 1917 and continued on Air Corps duty for the remainder of World War I. He was on duty with the 1st Marine Aeronautic Company, engaged in antisubmarine patrol off the Azores, and was presented an award of the Military Order of Aviz by the Portuguese government for action engaged in at that time.

In 1925, Brewster was an instructor in the Department of Tactics at Quantico, Virginia. This was preceded by service in Santo Domingo, followed by active participation in the Nicaraguan campaign. For "exceptional services rendered" in that action, he was presented the Medal of Merit by the president of the Republic of Nicaragua. Attached to the Commandant's office from 1929 to 1934, he was assigned variously at Washington, DC, at Boston, and at Philadelphia. During the latter part of this period, he was a member of the Marine Examining Board.

With the 4th Marines in Shanghai in 1934, Brewster was commended highly by the commander-in-chief, Asiatic Fleet, for the "splendid" reputation enjoyed by members of the command there. After leaving Shanghai, he traveled extensively before assuming executive duties with the 5th Marines, Headquarters, at Quantico. He became chief of staff and commanding officer of the 1st Marine Division. In September 1941, he was transferred to New River, North Carolina, as commanding officer, Barracks Detachment.

Early in 1943, Brewster was assigned to duty with the I Marine Amphibious Corps and remained in the Pacific until the latter part of 1944 after being awarded the Legion of Merit for his services as chief of staff of the Administrative Command during operations in

the Marianas Islands. On his return from the Pacific, he reported to Quantico Naval Hospital and remained there until his transfer to Bethesda, Maryland.

During his many assignments with the Marine Corps, Brewster won distinction as an accomplished rifle and pistol marksman and participated on Marine and civilian teams. In 1932, he served as captain of the Marine Corps Rifle and Pistol Team, and in 1924, he traveled to the principal cities of France as adjutant of the International Rifle Team participating in competition. In 1935, he participated in the Asiatic Division Rifle and Pistol Competition at Peiping, China. He died at Bethesda Naval Hospital on 10 July 1945 at the age of 57 after a protracted illness. Brewster was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Major General Smedley D. Butler*

Smedley Darlington Butler was born on 30 July 1881. He was just a teen when, on 20 May 1898, he was appointed second lieutenant in the Marine Corps for the war with Spain. Following a brief period of instruction at Washington, DC, he served with the Marine Battalion, North Atlantic Squadron, until 11 February 1899, when he was ordered home and honorably discharged on 16 February 1899. He was commissioned a first lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 8 April 1899, promoted to captain on 23 July 1900, to major on 13 May 1908, to lieutenant colonel on 1 August 1916, to colonel (temporary) on 1 July 1918, to brigadier general (temporary) on 7 October 1918, to colonel (permanent) on 9 March 1919, to brigadier general (permanent) on 4 June 1920, and to major general on 5 July 1929. In April 1899, Butler was assigned to duty with the Marine Battalion at Manila, Philippine Islands. From 14 June to October 1900, he served with distinction in China, and was promoted to captain by brevet for distinguished conduct and public service in the presence of the enemy near Tientsin, China. He was wounded in that battle on 13 July 1900.

In January 1901, Butler served at various posts within the continental limits of the United States and on several ships. He also served ashore in Puerto Rico and the Isthmus of Panama for short periods. In December 1909, he commanded the 3d Battalion, 1st Regiment, on the Isthmus of Panama. He was temporarily detached to command an expeditionary battalion organized for service in Nicaragua on 11 August 1912, where he participated in the bombardment, assault, and capture of Coyotepe during 12–31 October. He remained on duty in Nicaragua until November 1912, when he rejoined the Marines at Camp Elliott, Panama.

His first Medal of Honor was presented following action at Vera Cruz, Mexico, on 21–22 April 1914, where he commanded the Marines who landed and occupied the city. Butler “was eminent and conspicuous in command of his Battalion. He exhibited courage and skill in leading his men through the action of the 22nd and in the final occupation of the city.” The following year, he was awarded a second Medal of Honor for bravery and forceful leadership as commanding officer of detachments of Marines and seamen of the

USS *Connecticut* in repulsing Caco resistance at Fort Rivière, Haiti, on 17 November 1915.

During World War I, he commanded the 13th Regiment and Camp Pontanezen, Brest, France. For exceptionally meritorious service, he was awarded the Army Distinguished Service Medal, the Navy Distinguished Service Medal, and the French Order of the Black Star. When he returned to the United States in 1919, he became commanding general of the Marine Barracks Quantico, Virginia, and served in this capacity until January 1924, when he was granted leave of absence to accept the post of director of public safety for the City of Philadelphia. In February 1926, he returned to China for duty with the 3d Marine Brigade. From April to October 31, he again commanded at Marine Barracks Quantico. On 1 October 1931, he was retired upon application after completion of 33 years of service in the Marine Corps. Butler died at the Naval Hospital, Philadelphia, on 21 June 1940, following a four-week illness. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

### *General Clifton B. Cates*

Clifton Bledsoe Cates was born on 31 August 1893 in Tiptonville, Tennessee. He graduated from the University of Tennessee in 1916 with a bachelor's degree in law. On 13 June 1917, as a second lieutenant in the Reserves, he reported for active duty at the Marine Barracks Port Royal, South Carolina, and sailed for France in January. As a lieutenant with the 6th Regiment in World War I, he fought in the Verdun defensive sector, at Bouresches and Belleau Wood in the Aisne defensive, at Soissons in the Aisne-Marne offensive, in the Marbache sector of the Saint-Mihiel offensive, and in Blanc Mont and Argonne-Forest engagements of the Meuse-Argonne offensive. He earned the Navy Cross, Army Distinguished Service Cross for heroism in the Bouresches and Belleau Wood fighting, in which he was both gassed and wounded. He earned the Silver Star Medal at Soissons, where he was wounded a second time, and an oak leaf cluster in lieu of a second Silver Star during Blanc Mont fighting.

After the occupation of Germany, Cates returned to the United States in September 1919, and he served in Washington, DC, as a White House aide and aide-de-camp to the Commandant of the Marine Corps. He then served in San Francisco as aide-de-camp to the commanding general, Department of the Pacific, from October 1920 to June 1923. In March 1928, after serving on recruiting duty at Spokane, Washington, and Omaha, Nebraska, Cates was named to serve on the American Battle Monuments Commission in Washington. In May 1929, he was ordered to Shanghai, China, where he rejoined the 4th Marines. In 1932, he studied at the Army Industrial College and, after he completed his course in June 1933, Cates went to Quantico, where he served with the 7th Marines and completed the Senior Course at the Marine Corps Schools. In September 1935, he was assigned to the War Plans Section of the Division of Operations and Training, Headquarters Marine Corps.

In August 1937, Cates sailed for Shanghai as a battalion commander with the 6th Marines until he rejoined the 4th Marines in March 1938. The following year, he was brought back to Washington for instruction at the Army War College. After the course was completed in June 1940, he reported to Philadelphia Navy Yard as director of the Marine Officers Basic School. In May 1942, Cates



took command of the 1st Marines, which he led at Guadalcanal. After commanding the 1st Marines in the Guadalcanal-Tulagi landings and the capture and defense of Guadalcanal, he fought as commander of the 4th Marine Division in the Marianas operation, the Tinian campaign, and seizure of Iwo Jima.

In 1943, Cates began his first tour of duty as Commandant of Marine Corps Schools at Quantico until June 1944. The following month, he took command of the 4th Marine Division in the Pacific theater until the end of the war. In December 1945, Cates became president of the Marine Corps Equipment Board at Quantico, until he was named commanding general of Marine Barracks Quantico. On 1 January 1948, he was advanced to the rank of general and sworn in as Commandant of the Marine Corps. General Cates died on 4 June 1970 at the U.S. Naval Hospital, Annapolis, Maryland, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## *Brigadier General Albertus W. Catlin*

Albertus Wright Catlin was born on 1 December 1868 in Rome, New York, and was commissioned a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1892. After serving at various posts and stations in the United States and onboard Navy ships, Catlin saw action in the Spanish–American War as commanding officer of the Marine detachment aboard the USS *Maine* (ACR 1), when the ship was destroyed in Havana Harbor in February 1898.

While serving in Cuba in 1911, he commanded a battalion of the 1st Regiment at Guantanamo Bay. He then commanded the 3d Regiment at Vera Cruz, where he was awarded the Medal of Honor for bravery.

With the outbreak of World War I, Catlin was placed in charge of the Marine training camp at Quantico, Virginia. In October 1917, he was sent to France as commanding officer of the 6th Regiment. From 1 to 6 June 1918, Colonel Catlin's 6th Regiment saw action on the front lines from Paris-Metz Road through Lucy-le-Bocage to Hill 142. On 6 June, with his regiment attacking Bois de Belleau, Catlin was wounded in the chest by a sniper and evacuated to a hospital the next day.

Catlin was also awarded two Croix de Guerre, one with palms and one with gilt star for gallantry in action against the enemy at Belleau Wood. He was also made an officer of the Legion of Honor for his services in the same sector.

His citation states that General Catlin was thrown into the thick of battle “on a front then under violent enemy attack.” It adds: “Commanded his regiment with precision and judgment, which bore fruit in the operation up to 6 June 1918, inclusive; then in directing in Belleau Wood, where he was wounded by a bullet which went through his shoulder and lung.”

Soon after his return from France, Catlin summarized his war experiences in a book called *With the Help of God and a Few Marines*.

Upon returning to the United States, Catlin served at Headquarters Marine Corps and was appointed brigadier general on 30 August 1918. Following his tour at Headquarters, he was assigned to the Marine Barracks Quantico, and in November 1918, he sailed for Haiti where he assumed command of the 1st Brigade until Septem-

ber 1919. In December 1919, Brigadier General Catlin retired from the Marine Corps. As a result of his wound from the sniper attack, he was in ill health until his death in Culpeper, Virginia, on 31 May 1933. Catlin was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Major Edward B. Cole*

Edward Ball Cole was born on 23 September 1879 in Boston, Massachusetts, and died on 18 June 1918 from wounds received in action at Belleau Wood. He was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 22 April 1904, where he was regarded as one of the leading machine-gun experts in the country. In service prior to his departure for France in World War I, he had duty in Cuba, the Philippines, Puerto Rico, and Mexico.

Under command of Cole, the 6th Machine Gun Battalion, as a part of the 4th Brigade, continued its training in the Bourmont Training Area until 15 March 1918, when it moved to a front line sector with the other elements of the 2d Division, southeast of Verdun sector on 14 May 1918, and proceeded to an area around Vitry-le-François for open warfare training. After finding this area unsuitable for this purpose, they moved to a training area around Gisors-Chaumont-en-Vexin, near 4th Brigade, when sudden orders came in on 31 May 1918 to move to the Château Thierry sector. The battalion entered the front line near Belleau Woods and was in the thick of the fight to such an extent that the battalion itself and the majority of its officers were decorated by the French government.

Cole was among the first contingent of Marines to go to France. In a communiqué from France, it is noted that he “in the Bois de Belleau on 10 June 1918, displayed extraordinary heroism in organizing positions, rallying his men, and disposing of his guns, continuing to expose himself fearlessly until he fell . . .” He lost his right hand and received wounds in the upper arm and both thighs from which he died eight days later on 18 June 1918.

Posthumous decorations and citations were conferred upon him, namely the Distinguished Service Cross, the Navy Cross, Légion d’Honneur, the Croix de Guerre with palm, Citation (General Orders No. 40, 2d Division), and letter of commendation from the Commandant of the Marine Corps. He also earned the Mexican Campaign Medal for service in Vera Cruz, Mexico, in 1914.

*Major General Eli K. Cole*

Eli Kelley Cole was born on 1 September 1867 in New York City. He was appointed a naval cadet on 4 September 1883 and graduated from the U.S. Naval Academy on 8 June 1888. After completing the two-year period of sea duty then incumbent upon the graduates of Annapolis, Cole transferred to the U.S. Marine Corps as a second lieutenant on 1 July 1890. He was promoted to first lieutenant on 19 July 1892; to captain on 6 June 1899; to major on 28 September 1903; to lieutenant colonel on 13 May 1908; to colonel on 27 October 1914; to brigadier general on 29 August 1916; and to major general on 20 June 1925.

In the early part of 1908, Cole was detailed to study at the Army War College, Washington, DC. On 1 January 1909, Cole assumed command of the Marine Officers' School, which had been redesignated as of that date from Marine Barracks Port Royal, South Carolina. His tenure at Port Royal was interrupted in December 1909 by four months in command of the 2d Regiment on further expeditionary service in Panama. Returning to the United States in April 1910, he resumed command at Port Royal in May and remained on station until April 1911 when he was ordered to duty at Headquarters Marine Corps.

In January 1915, Cole was assigned to command Marine Barracks Annapolis, Maryland, but six months later was detached to assume command of the 2d Regiment for duty in Haiti. In August of the same year, he relinquished this command in favor of the 1st Regiment and, in November 1916, he assumed command of the 1st Provisional Brigade, comprising all the Marine forces in Haiti. In 1920, he was awarded the Navy Cross for his services in Haiti.

Returning to the United States in November 1917, Cole served at Headquarters until January 1918 when he was reassigned to Marine Barracks Parris Island, South Carolina. He remained there until 1 September, when he transferred to head the 5th Brigade for duty in France. Cole arrived in France on 24 September 1918. Since his brigade was broken up to guard various depots and stations in the Services of Supply, AEF, he was first assigned the additional duty as observer with the 2d Division and later detailed to command the 41st Division (1st Depot Division), U.S. Army, a post that he filled

from 29 October to 26 December 1918. Subsequently, he headed the 1st Replacement Depot, AEF, and the American embarkation center at Le Mans in addition to his duties as commanding general of the far-flung 5th Brigade. He returned to the United States on 31 March 1919.

The next Marine command assigned to Cole was a third tour at Parris Island, which he began in September 1919 and remained in until August 1924 except for two months between 20 December 1923 and 29 February 1924 when acting as commanding general, Marine Corps Expeditionary Force, on maneuvers at Culebra, Puerto Rico. From August 1924 to June 1927, he assumed command of the Department of the Pacific until his death in San Francisco, California, on 4 July 1929. His remains were interred in a vault in Carmel, New York.

### *Lieutenant Colonel Alfred A. Cunningham*

Alfred Austell Cunningham, the Marine Corps' first aviator, was born on 8 March 1882 in Atlanta, Georgia. He accepted a commission as second lieutenant in the Marine Corps in January 1909 when he was 27 years old. In 1911, Cunningham was stationed at Marine Barracks Philadelphia. On 16 May 1912, Cunningham was detached from duty at the Navy Yard, Philadelphia, and ordered to the aviation camp the Navy had set up at Annapolis to learn to fly. He reported on 22 May 1912, which is recognized as the birthday of Marine Corps aviation.

For the next 15 months, Cunningham's assignments involved flying. From the camp at Annapolis, he was ordered to Hammondsport, New York, to consult with Burgess Company and Glenn Curtiss about the Curtiss hydroplane. A few weeks later, he conferred with the Burgess Company and Mr. Curtiss concerning a new Navy airplane. On 27 April 1915, Cunningham was ordered to Pensacola for instruction in and assignment to aviation duty again. In February 1917, he was detailed to Navy Yard, Philadelphia, to establish, equip, and command Aviation Company for a Marine Corps advanced base force. The Northern Bombing Group was Cunningham's idea, and he secured the authority to organize, equip the four squadrons, secure a field, erect necessary buildings, and obtain planes and equipment. He recruited and organized the entire project with the help of Lieutenants Bernard L. Smith, William M. McIlvain, Francis T. Evans Sr., and Roy S. Geiger.

On 12 July 1918, 72 landplanes, 176 officers, and 1,030 enlisted men sailed on the USS *DeKalb* from New York and arrived at Brest on 30 July 1918. After arriving in France, the unit was designated the Northern Bombing Group and, in the three months it was stationed in Europe, the group operated at Oye (Burgundy region), Le Fresne, Saint-Pol in France, and at Hondschoote, Ghisteltes, Varsenare, and Knesselare, Belgium. Despite shortages in planes, spares, and tools, the group performed 43 raids with the British and French as well as 14 independent raids and shot down 8 enemy aircraft. The group also dropped 52,000 pounds of bombs and supplied 2,600 pounds of food for the food-dropping missions in which it participated. Two years later, Cunningham received the Navy Cross for his services

with the Northern Bombing Group. When he returned to the United States, Cunningham became officer-in-charge of Marine aviation until 26 December 1920, when he was detailed to command the 1st Air Squadron in Santo Domingo.

On 10 May 1935, he appeared before a naval retiring board at Marine Barracks Washington, DC, which found him to be incapacitated for active service. While on the retired list, he was appointed a lieutenant colonel with rank from 16 January 1936. On 27 May 1939, he died in Sarasota, Florida, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.



### *Brigadier General Charles A. Doyen*

Charles Augustus Doyen was born in Concord, New Hampshire, on 3 September 1859. Doyen entered the Naval Academy as a cadet midshipman on 21 June 1876; was transferred to the Marine Corps and commissioned a second lieutenant on 1 July 1883; and then assigned to duty at Marine Barracks New York. Doyen served with the Marine detachments on the USS *Galena* (1880) and USS *Tennessee* (1865); was transferred to the Marine Barracks League Island, Pennsylvania, in 1886; and was later assigned to sea duty on the USS *Adams* (1874). He was promoted to first lieutenant in October 1899. In October 1890, he was ordered to Marine Barracks Mare Island, California. In spring 1898 during the Spanish War, he commanded the Marine Guard of the USS *Saint Paul* (SP 1643).

Doyen was promoted to captain on 16 August 1898 and to major on 26 March 1900. In May 1900, he was assigned to duty commanding the Marine Guard of the *New York*, and as fleet Marine officer of the North Atlantic Fleet. He participated in winter maneuvers in West Indian waters with a regiment of Marines onboard the *Prairie* in 1902 and, in February 1904, he was detailed to command a battalion of Marines organized for service in the Philippines. He subsequently commanded the 2d Regiment and the 1st Brigade in the Philippine Islands. Doyen was promoted to lieutenant colonel on 12 May 1905 and, in August 1906, he was ordered to duty at Headquarters Marine Corps, Washington, DC.

Doyen was promoted to colonel on 27 January 1909 and, in spring 1911, he was given command of the 4th Expeditionary Regiment on the USS *Buffalo* (1893) and then transferred to the *Pennsylvania* from which he disembarked with his regiment and camped at Camp Thomas, North Island, San Diego, California. In August 1913, he was again ordered to command the 1st Brigade in the Philippines until April 1914, when he was ordered back to the United States. In July 1914, Doyen was assigned to command the 5th Regiment, organized for service on the *Hancock* in Cuban and Santo Domingo waters. In January 1915, he was placed in command of Marine Barracks Washington, DC, until 5 June 1917, when he was ordered to command the 5th Regiment, which was detached for service with the U.S. Army in France. Doyen sailed with his regi-

ment for France on the *Hancock* on 11 June 1917; transferred at sea to the *Henderson*; arrived at Saint-Nazaire on 27 June 1917; and reported to the commanding general of the American Expeditionary Forces for duty.

Doyen was promoted to brigadier general on 26 March 1917. He was relieved from command of the 5th Regiment and then assigned to the command of the 4th Marine Brigade on 24 October 1914. From 9 November 1917 to 7 December 1917, he was on detached duty commanding Base Section No. 1, Line of Communications, AEF. On 7 May 1918, having been found incapacitated for active service, General Doyen was relieved from duty and ordered to the United States, where he arrived on 22 May. On 21 June 1918, he was assigned to command Marine Barracks Quantico, where he died on 6 October 1918 of Spanish influenza and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## *Brigadier General Robert H. Dunlap*

Robert Henry Dunlap was born in Washington, DC, on 22 December 1879. On 8 August 1898, at 18 years of age, he was commissioned a second lieutenant in the U.S. Marine Corps.

He first tasted combat in 1899 during the Philippine Insurrection. The next year, he saw action in the Boxer Rebellion, where he fought with the international column in the Battle of Tientsin. After China, he returned to the Philippines, where he helped remove the insurrectionists from the island of Samar. In 1902, he returned home as a 23-year-old captain.

During the next 15 years, Dunlap served with numerous expeditions to foreign lands: served twice in Panama during the building of the Canal; served in Cuba with the Army of Cuban Pacification; commanded an artillery battalion during the occupation of Vera Cruz, Mexico; and commanded another artillery battalion in Haiti and Santo Domingo from 1915 to 1917.

Soon after the United States' entry into World War I, Dunlap was appointed to General Pershing's staff in England from May to July 1917. That summer, he was recalled to organize the Marine Corps' new 10th Artillery Regiment and trained his new command at Quantico, while awaiting orders.

Then in February 1918, he was detailed to duty on Admiral Sims' staff of the American Naval Command in London. After service with Sims' staff, Dunlap reported to general headquarters, AEF, on 17 October 1918. However, two facts were clear: the end of the war was rapidly approaching and the Army's position of no Marine artillery in France had not changed. Dunlap went to Pershing's chief of artillery and requested a regiment of Army field artillery. After a certain amount of sparring, Dunlap was assigned as an observer to the 2d Division. Upon arrival on 30 October, Dunlap was given command of the 17th Field Artillery Regiment, an Army organization equipped with 155mm howitzers, which he commanded during the Meuse-Argonne offensive, the crossing of the Rhine River, and the subsequent occupation of Germany.

Upon returning home in 1919, he completed the course at the Army General Staff College and, in 1922, took command of the Marine detachment at Peking, China. Dunlap's last combat tour was

in Nicaragua, where he led the 11th Regiment in a bush war typical to those in Central America. He quieted the disaffected northern area of that country, for which he was awarded the Navy Distinguished Service Medal and the Nicaraguan Presidential Medal of Merit.

After Nicaragua, he was promoted to brigadier general and, in 1930, Dunlap was detailed to attend the *École Supérieure de Guerre* in France, where he sailed with his wife. While in France on 19 May 1931, Dunlap and his wife visited an area where French peasants had fashioned hillside caves into small dwellings. The hillside gave way, sealing a French farmer's wife in one of the caves. Dunlap, in an attempt to rescue her, was buried under an avalanche of rock and falling timbers. Twenty-four hours later, they were dug out. The woman was alive, but Dunlap had died as a result of covering her with his own body. He was interred in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Colonel Francis T. Evans*

Francis Thomas Evans Sr. was born in Delaware, Ohio, on 3 June 1886 and attended the Ohio Wesleyan University. After spending three years in the Ohio National Guard, Evans was commissioned a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps in January 1909. He was first ordered to the Marine Officers' School, Port Royal, South Carolina. While a member of the student body, he was detached to duty with the 1st Regiment, Expeditionary Brigade, at the Canal Zone, Panama. He was then detached from the school, but remained with the brigade until April 1910, when he was transferred to Marine Barracks Mare Island, California. In September of that year, he was again detached to the rifle range at Fort Barry, California. He was ordered to the Hawaiian Islands in October 1912. Evans won his promotion to first lieutenant the following January, and the next month he was detached to Marine Barracks Naval Station Guam, where he remained until the early part of 1915.

Upon his return to the United States, Evans was sent to Naval Air Station Pensacola, Florida, for flight training. He earned his wings in July 1915. In March 1917, after receiving his captain's commission and after completing several tours of temporary duty in connection with aviation, the flyer was detached and sent to the naval base in Philadelphia. Evans' second tour of foreign shore duty began in early 1918 when he sailed for the Azores to command the Marine Aeronautic Detachment there. In July of the same year, he assumed command of the Marine Aviation Detachment at Miami, Florida. A year later, he transferred to Quantico to command the Marine Aviation Detachment.

Evans joined the 1st Brigade in Haiti in 1921, shortly before being promoted to major. In 1923, he was detailed to the Field Officer's School, Quantico. Upon completion of his studies, he assumed command of the 1st Battalion there. After participating in maneuvers in the Pacific, he was detached to the Naval Base San Diego, California, in 1925. In February of the following year, Evans was detached to Naval Air Station San Diego and, in the following April, was then detailed to temporary duty at Manila and Olongapo, Philippine Islands, and China.

In 1927, Evans attended the Army Service Tactical School, Langley Field, Virginia. Upon completion, he was sent to Haiti until he was again detached to the Naval Air Station San Diego in 1930. Two years later, he returned to Quantico and was appointed a lieutenant colonel. Evans retired from the Marine Corps on 1 July 1937 but, when World War II began, he requested reassignment to active duty. He was ordered to command the Marine Barracks Norfolk Naval Base, Virginia, in October 1939, and remained in that capacity until February 1944. He was appointed to the rank of colonel while serving at Norfolk. In 1944, he was transferred to the Marine Corps Schools, Quantico, to become assistant president of the Marine Corps Equipment Board. He retired from the Marines in 1944. Francis T. Evans died on 14 March 1974 after six years of declining health. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Brigadier General Frank E. Evans*

Frank Edgar Evans was born in Franklin, Pennsylvania, on 19 November 1876. He was a private in the Wisconsin Infantry Volunteers during the Spanish-American War. On 15 February 1900, he accepted commission as a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps. On 28 March 1901, he was promoted to first lieutenant. In the early years of his service, Evans was an active shooter. He was captain of the Marine Corps Rifle Team in 1904 and 1905. He retired as a captain on 28 February 1905, but was then ordered to active duty on 27 July 1905. He was a distinguished marksman and was appointed adjutant of the American Palma Rifle Team in 1907 and of the American Olympic Rifle Team in 1908. On 13 April 1911, he was commissioned as a captain in the Marine Corps effective 28 February 1905. On 21 May 1917, he qualified for transfer to active list by the Marine Examining Board. He was commissioned a major on 26 June 1917.

During World War I, Evans served in France with the 6th Regiment. While serving in France, he participated in the Aisne-Marne defensive (Château-Thierry) from 1 to 30 June 1918; in the Marbache sector (Pont-à-Mousson) from 7 to 16 August 1918; and in the Saint-Mihiel offensive from 12 to 16 September 1918. In recognition of his services in France, he was awarded the U.S. Army Certificate of Citation by the commander-in-chief of the American Expeditionary Force, General John J. Pershing. He also received the Navy Cross for exceptionally meritorious and distinguished service as adjutant of the 6th Marine Regiment. He was promoted to lieutenant colonel on 4 March 1921 and then to the rank of colonel in 24 December 1924.

At the conclusion of World War I, he pursued a course at the Army War College and at the Naval War College. In May 1927, he joined the Gendarmerie d'Haiti as Commandant of the Garde, and held the rank of major general until 31 March 1930, when he returned to the United States and assumed duties in the office of Chief of Naval Operations in the Navy Department.

On 1 December 1940, he retired from the Marine Corps. On 25 November 1941, he died at the Naval Hospital, Pearl Harbor. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## *Major General Logan Feland*

Logan Feland was born in Hopkinsville, Kentucky, on 11 August 1869. During the war with Spain, he was captain of Company F, 3d Kentucky Infantry. He was appointed directly to the rank of first lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1899. Feland was then promoted to captain on 3 March 1903, to major on 29 August 1916, to lieutenant colonel on 26 March 1917, to colonel on 1 July 1918, to brigadier general on 9 March 1919, and to major general on 1 October 1931.

As lieutenant and captain, he served with Marine detachments on the USS *Oregon* (BB 3), *Massachusetts* (BB 2), *Indiana*, *Minnesota* (BB 22), and *Montana*. Prior to World War I, Feland had eight years of foreign duty service in Panama, at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, and in San Juan, Puerto Rico, but also service with the Army of Cuban Pacification, in Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic, in Culebra, Puerto Rico, and in Vera Cruz, Mexico. His home service included duty at Marine Barracks Washington, DC; League Island (Philadelphia); Annapolis, Maryland; Narragansett Bay, Rhode Island; Norfolk, Virginia; New York; New London, Connecticut; and Monroe, Virginia.

Feland was attached to the 5th Regiment for service in France in World War I and was among the first contingent of American forces that went overseas with General Pershing in May 1917. On his arrival in France, Feland was made executive officer of the 5th Regiment. When the unit, as part of the 4th Brigade, was thrown into the breach to stem the German advance at Château Thierry in May 1918, Feland was in the thick of the fighting. At Belleau Woods in June 1918, when the halt in the German advance was turned into a retreat, Feland was given command of all troops in the Woods. After his promotion to colonel, Feland became commanding officer of the 5th Regiment and, as such, led it in the battles of Soissons, Blanc Mont Ridge, and in the Argonne. For his outstanding exploits in the war, Feland was awarded the Distinguished Service Cross and the Distinguished Service Medals of both the Army and the Navy; officer's rank in the Legion of Honor; the Croix de Guerre with bronze star, gold star, and four palms; and was cited in dispatches six times.



In May 1919, Feland was stationed at Headquarters Marine Corps until December, when he was detached to command the 2d Brigade in Santo Domingo. The following fall, he again joined Headquarters in the capacity of director of the Division of Operations and Training for the next two years, after which he was assistant to the Major General Commandant for another two years. From November 1926 to February 1927, he was called from his command of the Marine Expeditionary Force at Quantico to head the eastern section of the U.S. Marine Mail Guard.

In April 1927, Feland took command of the 2d Brigade in Nicaragua. Four months later, he was transferred to the command of Marine Barracks Parris Island, South Carolina, which he held until 1928. He returned to Nicaragua and assumed command of the brigade for a second time, until March 1929, when Feland was awarded another Distinguished Service Medal.

Feland was assigned as commanding general, Department of the Pacific, in July 1929. He was serving in that position when he was detached on 25 February 1933. Feland retired on 1 September 1933 and died in Columbus, Ohio, in July 1936. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Lieutenant General James G. Harbord*

U.S. Army

James Guthrie Harbord was born in Bloomington, Illinois, on 21 March 1866. He graduated from Kansas State Agricultural College in 1886. He enlisted in the U.S. Army as a private on 10 January 1891. On 2 August 1891, he accepted commission as a second lieutenant in the cavalry. In 1893, he was ordered to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, for Infantry and Cavalry School. He was promoted to first lieutenant on 1 July 1898. In 1903, Harbord served with the 11th Cavalry in the Philippines and was promoted to colonel and served as assistant chief of the Philippine Constabulary for 10 years. He was assigned to the 1st Cavalry at the Presidio of Monterey, California. He served with the regiment at that station and on the Mexican border until January 1915. At that time, he was promoted to major on 10 December 1914.

Harbord was on duty in San Francisco during the city's exposition in 1915. In October of that year, he returned to the Presidio of Monterey, where he remained until October 1916. He was then detailed as a student at the Army War College, Washington, DC, from which he graduated in May 1917. The same month, he was promoted to lieutenant colonel. Harbord, while still a major, was among the officers General Pershing selected to take with him to France immediately after our entrance into the First World War. On 5 August 1917, Harbord was appointed colonel (temporary) in the Regular Army and brigadier general in the National Army. With the latter rank, through the critical period of assembling, organizing, and training the American Army in France, he served as chief of staff of the AEF. He was relieved on 5 May 1918 and assigned to command the 4th Brigade, 2d Division.

Harbord commanded the Marines until 11 July 1918. Under his command, the unit helped make Château-Thierry and Belleau Wood household names in the United States. On 26 June, Harbord was promoted to major general in the National Army and, upon acceptance of that commission on 11 July, he was assigned to command the 2d Division. He took over command on 15 July, and three days later the unit entered the battle of Soissons, which according to some authorities was the real turning point in the war. His service on

the front line came to an end on 26 July. After that, he was in charge of Services of Supply for the remainder of the period of hostilities, until 26 May 1919, when he again became chief of staff of the AEF. He held the post until August 1919, when he was designated by President Wilson as chief of the military mission to Armenia to report on the question of a mandate under the League of Nations. Upon completion of that duty in November 1919, he returned to the United States and was assigned to command Camp Travis, Texas. He commanded that post and that of the 2d Division until 8 June 1921. Before he vacated his emergency commission as major general in 1920, he had already been promoted to the same grade in the Regular Army, so that he served continuously as a major general from the time of his appointment to his retirement.

Upon relief from command of the 2d Division in June 1921, Harbord was detailed as deputy chief of staff in Washington and served in that capacity until his retirement, at his own request, after more than 30 years' service on 29 December 1922. He died on 21 August 1947 and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## General Franklin A. Hart

Franklin Augustus Hart was born on 16 September 1894 in Cuthbert, Georgia, and is a native resident of Eufaula, Alabama. He attended Alabama Polytechnic Institute, graduating in the class of 1915. On 6 April 1917, he was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps and, four months later, promoted to first lieutenant. After completing a course of instruction at the Marine Officers School, Norfolk, Virginia, he was ordered to sea duty as commanding officer of the Marine detachment aboard the USS *Vermont*. He was promoted to the rank of captain in October 1917.

In September 1918, he was transferred from sea duty and, in October, sailed for France as commanding officer of Company B, Machine Gun Battalion, 5th Brigade. He returned to the United States in July 1919 and was assigned to Marine Barracks Quantico, Virginia. Two months later, Hart was ordered to the Dominican Republic for duty with the Guardia Nacional Dominicana, as district commander of Santo Domingo City. In December 1919, he was assigned as commanding officer of 77th Machine Gun Company, 2d Battalion, 5th Regiment, at Marine Barracks Quantico. In October 1920, he was transferred to Marine Barracks Washington DC, where he served as adjutant.

In June 1926, Hart took command of the Marine detachment aboard the USS *Seattle*. In January 1927, he assumed command of the detachment aboard the USS *Rochester* (CA 2), and later the USS *Milwaukee* (CL 5). The detachment served ashore with a landing force in Nicaragua for the next five months. From June 1927 to July 1928, the general commanded the Marine detachment aboard the *Rochester* and he served six months of this tour ashore in Nicaragua.

In August 1928, Hart was stationed at the Marine Barracks Norfolk, as executive officer, and Marine Barracks Quantico, as an instructor at the Officer Course, Marine Corps Schools. In August 1930, he joined the Constabulary Detachment, Garde d'Haiti, Gonaives, Haiti, as a company commander and district commander. In May 1933, he was named assistant chief of staff, Garde d'Haiti, Headquarters, Port-au-Prince, Haiti.

He went to England in June 1941, where he was attached to the American embassy in London as assistant naval attaché. He assumed duties as special naval observer and additional duty on the staff of the chief for combined operations as an instructor in amphibious warfare, and was appointed to the rank of colonel in December 1941. He participated in the battle of Dieppe in July 1942, for which he was specially commended for outstanding conduct. Appointed brigadier general in August 1944, he served as assistant division commander of the 4th Marine Division until late 1945 and participated in the battle for Iwo Jima, earning a Bronze Star.

Hart was named commandant of the Marine Corps Schools at Quantico in July 1950, and was promoted to the rank of lieutenant general in February 1951. He became commanding general, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific, in January 1952. He retired in August 1954 after 37 years of Marine Corps service and advanced to the rank of general. Franklin Hart died at the U.S. Naval Medical Center in Bethesda on 22 June 1967. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## *General Thomas Holcomb*

Thomas Holcomb was born on 5 August 1879 in New Castle, Delaware. He was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 13 April 1900. From September 1902 to April 1903, he served with the North Atlantic Fleet. General Holcomb served in the Philippine Islands from April 1904 to November 1906.

Holcomb was on duty with the Marine Legation Guard, Peking, China, and studied the Chinese language for many years between 1905 and 1914. He served as inspector of target practice in the Marine Corps from October 1914 to August 1917. He was promoted to major while serving in that capacity.

From August 1917 to January 1918, he commanded the 2d Battalion, 6th Regiment, at Marine Barracks Quantico, in preparation for overseas duty. From February 1918 to July of the next year, following his appointment to lieutenant colonel, he served with AEF in France. He commanded the 2d Battalion from August 1918 and served as second in command of the 6th Regiment, taking part in the Aisne defensive (Château-Thierry), the Aisne-Marne offensive (Soissons), the Marbache sector, the Saint-Mihiel offensive, the Meuse-Argonne offensive (Argonne Forest), and the march to the Rhine in Germany following the armistice.

In recognition of his distinguished service in France, Holcomb was awarded the Navy Cross, the Silver Star with three oak leaf clusters, a Meritorious Service Citation by the commander-in-chief for AEF, the Purple Heart, and was three times cited in general orders of the 2d Division. The French government conferred on him the Cross of the Legion of Honour, and three times awarded him the Croix de Guerre with palm.

From September 1922 to June 1924, he commanded the Marine Barracks Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, and on his return to the United States was ordered to the Command and General Staff School of the Army at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas. Upon completion of the course in June 1925, he was ordered to Headquarters Marine Corps (HQMC) for duty in the Division of Operations and Training, where he remained until June 1927.

He was promoted to colonel on 22 December 1928. From August 1927 to February 1930, Holcomb commanded the Marine de-

tachment, American Legation, Peiping, China. Holcomb attended the Naval War College Senior Course and then was ordered to the Army War College, graduating a year later.

From June 1932 to January 1935, prior to his appointment to brigadier general, he served in the Office of Naval Operations, Navy Department. He was promoted to brigadier general on 1 February 1935. He served as commandant of the Marine Corps Schools at Quantico until November 1936, when he was ordered to HQMC to assume the office of the Major General Commandant on 1 December 1936.

With his advancement to lieutenant general on 20 January 1942, pursuant to an act of Congress, the Commandant became the highest-ranking officer ever to command the Marine Corps until that time. On 5 August 1943, when Holcomb reached the regular retirement age, the president announced that Holcomb would continue to serve as Commandant of the Marine Corps, in recognition of his outstanding service in that capacity.

After nearly 44 years as a Marine, Holcomb retired on 1 January 1944. Because he had been specially commended for his performance of duty in actual combat, he was advanced one rank on the retired list in accordance with a newly passed act of Congress. He thus became the first Marine ever to hold the rank of general. Holcomb died on 24 May 1965 in New Castle, Delaware, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

## *Brigadier General Matthew H. Kingman*

Matthew Henry Kingman was born on 1 March 1890 in Humeston, Iowa. Graduating from the Virginia Military Institute in 1913, he was commissioned a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps. He served at sea onboard the USS *Delaware* from June 1915 to April 1917 as a junior Marine officer and was transferred to the 6th Machine Gun Battalion in June 1917.

While in France, Kingman commanded a machine gun company in the Verdun sector. He was wounded by machine-gun fire in the fighting at Château-Thierry but recovered to participate in the Aisne-Marne, Saint-Mihiel, and Meuse-Argonne offensives, concluding with the “March to the Rhine” as commander of a machine gun battalion.

Kingman spent time on recruiting duty from 1919 to 1921 and as an instructor for the Tactics Field Officers Course, Marine Corps Schools, in 1921 and 1922. He served in Haiti and Nicaragua and, in April 1940, was retired with the rank of colonel. In February 1942, he was assigned to active duty, becoming commanding officer at the San Diego training center. General Kingman’s military awards include the Silver Star with an oak leaf cluster; two 2d Division Citations; Purple Heart; Victory Medal with Aisne, Aisne-Marne, Saint-Mihiel, Meuse-Argonne and defensive sector clasps; Expeditionary Medal; 2d Nicaraguan Campaign Medal; Nicaraguan Medal of Merit and Diploma; French Croix de Guerre with gilt star; Croix de Guerre with palm; and the French fourragère.

Kingman died on 16 November 1946 from a cerebral hemorrhage at the U.S. Naval Medical Center in Bethesda and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.



### *Major General Harry Lee*

Harry Lee was born in Washington, DC, on 4 June 1872. He became a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 2 August 1898 and was ordered to the USS *Resolute* (1894), and sailed for Havana, Cuba. He served until 9 February 1899, when he was honorably discharged.

He was then commissioned a first lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 17 April 1899 and was promoted to captain on 23 July 1900, to major on 25 February 1914, to lieutenant colonel on 29 August 1916, to colonel on 1 July 1918, to brigadier general (temporary) on 28 March 1920, to brigadier general (permanent) on 5 June 1920, and to major general on 1 March 1934.

Between March 1904 and January 1907, Lee served in the Philippine Islands and, from 12 September 1905 to 11 April 1906, he commanded the Marine Guard, U.S. Legation, Peking, China. He served at various posts until 23 August 1912, when he sailed from Philadelphia on the *Prairie* as adjutant of the 1st Provisional Regiment for service in Panama. He served in Nicaragua from 5 September to 21 November 1912 and participated in the bombardment, assault, and capture of the fortifications of Coyotepe and Barranca. He also served for short periods in Haiti and Santo Domingo during 1914, 1915, and 1916.

On 1 August 1917, Lee joined Marine Barracks Quantico, for duty with the 6th Regiment, arriving with it in France on 8 February 1918. He was then detached to the U.S. Army for duty. He participated in the battles in the Château-Thierry sector from 1 June to 5 July 1918, as second in command of the 6th Regiment until 6 June and as its commanding officer after Colonel Catlin was wounded in action. Under his command, the regiment participated with distinction in the Aisne-Marne offensive (Soissons) from 17 July to 21 July 1918; the Marbache sector from 7 to 16 August 1918; the Saint-Mihiel offensive from 12 to 16 September 1918; the Blanc-Mont Ridge sector (Champagne) from 2 to 10 October 1918; the Meuse-Argonne offensive (Argonne Forest) from 1 to 11 November 1918; and in the march of the Allies to the Rhine. For his brilliant service in command of the 6th Regiment in France, he was decorated with the Army and Navy Distinguished Service Medals;

the French Legion of Honor; the Croix de Guerre with two palms and gilt star; and was cited three times in general orders.

He commanded the 1st Regiment at the Marine Barracks Navy Yard, Philadelphia, from 25 September 1919 to 20 May 1920 and served at Quantico from 2 October 1920 to 23 July 1921. From August 1921 to 18 July 1924, General Lee served as brigade commander of the 2d Brigade in Santo Domingo and later as military governor of that country. From there, he was ordered to Marine Barracks Parris Island, South Carolina, as commanding general, which he performed until 12 August 1927 when he was detached to the Marine Barracks Quantico, for duty as executive officer. On 1 October 1929, he returned to Parris Island for a second tour as commanding general. On 1 March 1933, he assumed command of the Marine Barracks Quantico, Virginia, a post that he held until the time of his death on 13 May 1935. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Lieutenant General John A. Lejuene*

John Archer Lejeune was born in Pointe Coupee, Louisiana, on 10 January 1867. He graduated from Louisiana State University and then from the U.S. Naval Academy in 1888. He was commissioned as a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1890. On 31 August 1890, Lejeune reported to the Marine Barracks New York. From 1 October 1891 to 28 July 1893, Lejeune served onboard the USS *Bennington* (PG 4) and was promoted to first lieutenant on 26 February 1892.

On 2 August 1897, Lejeune assumed command of the Marine guard of the USS *Cincinnati*. He was promoted to captain on 3 March 1899. On 22 November 1900, he reported to Pensacola, Florida. He was promoted to major on 3 March 1903. On 8 August 1903, Lejeune was ordered to the USS *Panther* (1889) to command the Marine battalion. Arriving in the Philippines on 2 May 1907, Lejeune assumed command of Marine Barracks and Naval Prison, Navy Yard, Cavite, on 6 May 1907. He assumed command of the 1st Brigade on 15 June 1908 and was promoted to lieutenant colonel on 13 May 1909. On 27 November 1913, he sailed with the 2d Advance Base Regiment to Vera Cruz, Mexico, and landed there 22 April 1914, participating in the occupation of the city. He received his promotion to colonel on 25 February 1914. In December 1914, he became the assistant to the Major General Commandant of the Marine Corps. He was promoted to brigadier general on 29 August 1916.

With the outbreak of World War I, Lejeune assumed command of the Marine Barracks Quantico. In June 1918, he arrived at Brest, France, and was promoted to major general on 1 July 1918. Upon reporting to the commander of the American Expeditionary Forces, he was assigned to command a brigade of the 32d Division and later assumed command of the 4th Brigade of the 2d Division, following the division's attack in the Soissons offensive. On 28 July 1918, Lejeune assumed command of the 2d Division. He was the first Marine officer to hold an Army divisional command in combat and, following the armistice, he led his division into Germany. During that war, Lejeune was recognized by the French Legion of Honor, and the Croix de Guerre was bestowed upon him. General John J.

Pershing awarded him with the Distinguished Service Medal. The Navy Distinguished Service Medal was conferred upon him when he returned to the United States following the occupation of Germany.

In October 1919, he was appointed commanding general of Marine Barracks Quantico. He was appointed as Major General Commandant of the Marine Corps on 1 July 1920. He left Washington several times for tours of inspection in Haiti, Santo Domingo, Cuba, Puerto Rico, the West Coast, and elsewhere. On 10 November 1929, he retired to accept the position of superintendent of the Virginia Military Institute, serving there until his resignation in October 1937. On February 1942, he was advanced to the rank of lieutenant general on the Marine Corps retired list. Lejeune died on 20 November 1942 at the Union Memorial Hospital in Baltimore, Maryland, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Colonel James E. Mahoney*

James Edward Mahoney was born in Peabody, Massachusetts, on 15 December 1859. He entered the U.S. Naval Academy on 22 September 1876, graduating in 1881. After serving two years as a midshipman, he was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1883. During his early years, he served on several vessels including the USS *Marion* (1839), *Pensacola* (1859), *Tallapoosa* (1863), *Charleston*, and *Vermont*.

On 1 July 1890, he was promoted to the rank of first lieutenant. When the Spanish-American War broke out, he was assigned to the 1st Battalion of the North Atlantic Fleet under command of Lieutenant Colonel Robert W. Huntington and was a member of that battalion during the occupation of Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, and the engagement with Spanish forces that occurred during that period. As a result of his distinguished conduct and public service in the presence of the enemy at Guantanamo Bay, Mahoney was commended and later appointed a captain by brevet on 11 June 1895. On 3 March 1899, Mahoney was promoted to captain. In 1902, he was ordered to the Philippines Islands in command of a battalion of Marines and, in addition to his military duties, performed various civilian duties at Isabela. On 14 October 1903, he was promoted to the rank of major. In 1903, Mahoney commanded a battalion of Marines on expeditionary duty on the Isthmus of Panama. In 1904, he was detailed to command the Marine battalion at the Louisiana Purchase Exposition in St. Louis, Missouri (or the St. Louis World's Fair). For his services at this exposition, he received a letter of commendation from the representative of the Navy Department.

On 1 April 1905, Mahoney was promoted to the rank of lieutenant colonel. In 1906, Mahoney was again detailed on expeditionary duty in command of Marines on the Isthmus of Panama. In 1907–8, Mahoney was on duty in the Philippines Islands. On 27 November 1909, he was promoted to the rank of colonel. Shortly afterward, he went on expeditionary duty in command of the 1st Regiment to Nicaragua. During 1912, he was on expeditionary duty in command of the 2d Regiment of the provisional brigade on shore at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba. In 1914, he went on expeditionary duty at Vera Cruz, Mexico, where he was first the brigade commander

and later commander of the 1st Regiment. He returned to the United States in November 1914 when Vera Cruz was evacuated by American forces.

On 12 December 1917, Mahoney was assigned to command the 3d Provisional Brigade in Cuba. Under his command, the brigade returned to the United States in 1918 and was encamped at Fort Crockett, Galveston, Texas, for the remainder of the war. On 28 August 1916, Mahoney was promoted to the temporary rank of brigadier general. At his own request, he was placed on the retired list on 8 March 1919 with the permanent rank of colonel after more than 40 years of service. He died on 9 June 1926 at the U.S. Naval Medical Center in Bethesda and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

### *Major General Douglas C. McDougal*

Douglas Cassel McDougal was born on 23 April 1876 in San Francisco, California. He was appointed second lieutenant on 12 March 1900 and then promoted to first lieutenant on 14 October 1903, to captain on 23 January 1908, to major on 26 April 1917, to lieutenant colonel on 4 June 1920, to colonel on 1 October 1926, to brigadier general on 1 March 1934, and to major general on 1 October 1939.

As a lieutenant, McDougal served in the Philippine Islands, China, and Korea from 1900 to 1904. He participated in operations related to the Boxer Rebellion, and then commanded the Legation Guard at Seoul, Korea. From 1906 to 1909, he commanded the Marine detachment onboard the USS *Colorado* (ACR 7) and was then ordered to Headquarters Marine Corps, where he served until the early part of 1911. His principal duty while at Headquarters was as an instructor in rifle marksmanship.

In 1914, McDougal was detached for expeditionary service in Mexico, where he participated in the occupation of Vera Cruz in April 1914. In 1915 and 1916, he participated in field operations in Haiti, and also served in Santo Domingo in 1916. From August 1917 to July 1918, he was assigned to Headquarters Marine Corps as inspector of target practice. In July 1918, he was ordered to Quantico for duty with the 13th Regiment, and in September of that year sailed for France as second in command. After returning from Europe, he was in charge of ordnance material at the Depot of Supplies, Philadelphia, from September 1919 to January 1921.

From April 1921 to April 1925, McDougal served as chief of the Gendarmerie d'Haiti. In recognition of his services, the president of Haiti conferred upon him the Haitian Distinguished Service Medal. Following his return from Haiti and until February 1929, he was in charge of War Plans Section, Headquarters Marine Corps. Also in 1926, he was appointed aide to the president of Haiti during the latter's visit to Washington, and received the Haitian Medal of Honor and Merit for his contribution to the success of the mission.

From March 1929 to January 1931, McDougal was director-in-chief of the Guardia Nacional de Nicaragua, and for his outstanding services was awarded the Distinguished Service Medal by the president of the United States and the Medal of Distinction and Medal

of Merit by the president of Nicaragua. From May 1931 to April 1934, McDougal served at Headquarters Marine Corps as director of operations and training and, from April 1934 to April 1935, as assistant to the Major General Commandant. In May 1935, he joined Marine Corps Base San Diego, as commanding general, and in September of the same year was assigned additional duty of commanding general and acted as the state administrator of the Works Progress Administration.

After completing his tour at Parris Island in the late summer of 1939, McDougal was recommended for retirement by reason of physical disability. He retired on 1 January 1940 with the rank of major general. General McDougal died on 20 January 1964 and was buried in Fort Rosecrans National Cemetery in San Diego, California.



*Major General Wendell C. Neville*

Wendell Cushing Neville was born in Portsmouth, Virginia, on 12 May 1870. He graduated from the U.S. Naval Academy in 1890, and two years later he was commissioned a Marine Corps second lieutenant. At the outbreak of the Spanish-American War, Neville was assigned to the 1st Marine Battalion, organized under Lieutenant Colonel Robert Huntington for service in Cuba. The battalion staged a daring attack under heavy gunfire at Guantanamo Bay, established a beachhead, and routed enemy forces in that area. For outstanding valor and leadership in that action, Neville was awarded the Brevet Medal—highest Marine Corps decoration at that time—and brevet rank of captain.

Following his promotion to captain, Neville was assigned to a battalion of Marines ordered to China to relieve the hard pressed garrison at Peking during the Boxer Rebellion. He took part in four battles in that area and was again commended for his gallantry. Not long afterward, Neville was appointed military governor of the Basilan Province in the Philippines. Following that assignment, he served in Cuba, Nicaragua, Panama, and Hawaii. While in command of Marines landing at Vera Cruz, Mexico, on 21 April 1914, he displayed conspicuous gallantry and was awarded the Medal of Honor for his distinguished conduct.

On 1 January 1918, he was placed in command of the 5th Regiment in France, and in May Neville moved his regiment into action at Belleau Wood where Germany's big drive was decisively halted. In July, Neville's command was enlarged to include the 4th Marine Brigade, which he directed during the remaining days of the war and during its occupation service in Germany.

After service with the army of occupation in Germany, Neville and his brigade returned to the United States in July 1919. Promoted to major general in March 1920, he served as assistant to the Commandant of the Marine Corps and later became commanding general, Department of the Pacific with headquarters in San Francisco. He also commanded Marine Barracks Quantico, Virginia.

Neville succeeded Lejeune as Commandant of the Marine Corps on 5 March 1929; however, his sudden death on 8 July 1930 in Edgewater Beach, Maryland, ended his service to the Corps. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Brigadier General George C. Reid*

George Croghan Reid was born in Lorain, Ohio, on 9 December 1876. He was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps for the war with Spain on 20 May 1898. He was appointed first lieutenant on April 8, 1899 and then promoted to the rank of captain on 23 July 1900, to major on 16 January 1909, to lieutenant colonel on 29 August 1916, to colonel on 4 June 1920, and to brigadier general at retirement on 1 September 1930.

Reid served on the Asiatic Squadron from May 1899 to May 1902. This duty included service with the China Relief Expedition during the Boxer Rebellion from June 1900 to October 1900. He was a member of the relief forces that marched to rescue the legations besieged in Peking. He also performed duty in the Philippines Islands and with the Asiatic Fleet during this three-year period.

Returning from the Orient, Reid was stationed at various posts in the United States for the next few years. This service was interrupted by expeditionary duty on the Isthmus of Panama during the early part of 1904. In 1906, he returned to the Philippine Islands and remained there until 1912, when he again went on expeditionary duty to Nicaragua with the forces dispatched to protect American interests. During this service, he took part in the assault and capture of Coyotepe and Barranca on 19 November 1912, for which he received a letter of commendation for gallantry and conspicuous service in action.

Returning from this campaign, Reid again went on expeditionary duty to Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, and then returned to Philadelphia. He took part in the Culebra maneuvers of the Advance Base Brigade in January 1914. After that, he went to sea as division Marine officer of the Atlantic Fleet, remaining on this duty until May 1916. While serving in this capacity, he landed with the Marines in Vera Cruz, Mexico, on 21 April 1914 and took part in the engagements that lead to the occupation of that city. For distinguished conduct in the face of the enemy, he was awarded the Medal of Honor.

During World War I, Reid served at Quantico, Virginia, and at Galveston, Texas, with the 3d Brigade. From June 1919 to May 1921, he was on duty with the 2d Provisional Brigade in the Domin-

ican Republic. During part of this service, he also performed duty as the commanding officer of the Guardia Nacional Dominicana.

In 1921, he took the course of instruction at the Naval War College at Newport, Rhode Island. From July 1922 to July 1924, he served as commanding officer at Marine Barracks New York. From 1924 to 1925, he was on duty at the Army War College in Washington, DC, graduating from that institution. In 1925, he was transferred to Guam, commanding the Marines at that station. He retired on 1 September 1930, and was advanced to brigadier general after being specially commended in combat. Reid died on 19 February 1961 in the hospital at Harlingen Air Force Base, Texas. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Colonel Harold C. Snyder*

Harold Courtland Snyder was born in Virginia on 10 May 1872. He accepted appointment as a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1899. He was promoted to first lieutenant on 17 January 1901, to captain on 19 June 1903, to major on 16 March 1917, to lieutenant colonel on 19 November 1918, and to colonel on 17 July 1919.

After a six-month tour in the office of the secretary of the Navy, Snyder served at Marine Barracks Annapolis, studied at the Naval War College in Newport, Rhode Island, and performed various duties at Headquarters until assigned as aide-de-camp to Brigadier General Commandant Heywood on 10 June 1901. He continued in this capacity, except for a period of detached service in the office of the secretary of the Navy until January 1902. After that, he alternated between the 1st Brigade in the Philippines and ships and stations in the United States and the Pacific until April 1911.

Snyder assumed command of the Marine Corps New York Recruiting District in August 1911. In September of the following year, he was transferred to the Marine Corps Publicity Bureau, New York, as officer-in-charge. This assignment was interrupted by his detachment in February 1913 to command Company H, 2d Regiment, 2d Provisional Brigade, for service in Cuba. Returning to the United States, he was detailed to the U.S. Army Service Schools, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas. Snyder was a student in the "School of the Line" for the academic year 1913–14. This period of instruction was followed by expeditionary duty in command of the 46th Company in Vera Cruz, Mexico, and Cape Haitian, Haiti.

In January 1915, Snyder was placed in charge of the Marine Officers' School at Norfolk, Virginia, and transferred with that organization when it moved to Quantico in July 1917. He remained in charge of the school until February 1918, when he took command of the 2d Replacement Battalion at Quantico. He went overseas with the battalion in March 1918. In France, Snyder saw service at Pontanezen Barracks, Brest; commanded the 10th Training Area, Prauthoy; and served as 2d Division liaison officer with the 89th and 32d Divisions. He also commanded the 5th Regiment from 21 March 1919 until his detachment from AEF in July 1919.

Upon returning to the United States, Snyder served at Marine Barracks Quantico, and at Headquarters Marine Corps prior to being assigned in July 1924 to the 1st Brigade in Haiti, where he commanded first the 8th and then the 2d Regiment. June 1926 found Snyder back in the United States and in command of Marine Barracks Philadelphia, until April 1927, when he sailed from San Diego for China as commanding officer of 6th Regiment. He commanded this organization at Tientsin until August 1928.

Snyder embarked on his last active duty assignment as commanding officer of Marine Barracks Parris Island on 17 October 1928. On 5 July 1929, he was detached from Parris Island to await retirement, which became effective on 6 November 1929. He died on 8 October 1933 at the U.S. Naval Hospital in Washington, DC, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*General Allen H. Turnage*

Allen Hal Turnage was born on 3 January 1891 in Farmville, North Carolina. He attended the University of North Carolina before entering the Marine Corps as a second lieutenant in November 1913. In the early years of his career, he served in Haiti and with the famed 5th Brigade in France during World War I. Turnage served as commanding officer of Machine Gun Battalion, 5th Marine Brigade. Following World War I, he was an instructor at the Marine Officers' School, Quantico; served with the Gendarmerie d'Haiti from 1922 to 1925; and completed the Field Officers' Course at Quantico. Later, between two tours of duty at Headquarters Marine Corps, he was assigned sea duty on the staff of Battleship Divisions Four and Three.

In 1935, Turnage was appointed director of the Marine Officers' Basic School at Philadelphia Navy Yard, following which he served with the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, as battalion commander and regimental executive officer, respectively. Ordered overseas in 1939, he served as commanding officer of Marine forces in North China and as commanding officer of the Marine Detachment, American embassy, Peiping. He returned to Headquarters Marine Corps in April 1941 and was serving as director of the Division of Plans and Policies when World War II broke out.

In June 1942, he was ordered to Camp Lejeune, North Carolina, to take command of the base and its training center, which included organization and training of two regimental combat teams for the 3d Marine Division. That October, he joined the newly formed 3d Marine Division as assistant division commander, becoming commanding general on Guadalcanal in September 1943. He then led the division in the landing at Empress Augusta Bay, Bougainville, Papua New Guinea, in 1943 and in the recapture of Guam in 1944.

After two years with 3d Division, Turnage was assigned to Headquarters Marine Corps in September 1944 as director of personnel and later as Assistant Commandant of the Marine Corps. In May 1946, his alma mater, the University of North Carolina, awarded him the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws. His final assignment was as commanding general of Fleet Marine Force, Pacific.

In addition to the Navy Cross and the Distinguished Service Medal, his personnel decorations include the Legion of Merit; the Presidential Unit Citation; the Navy Unit Commendation; the Haitian Distinguished Service Medal; the Nicaraguan Medal of Distinction with Diploma; and the Dominican Order of Military Merit, class two with white insignia. General Turnage was the honorary life chairman of the 3d Marine Division Association. He died on 22 October 1971 at the U.S. Naval Medical Center in Bethesda, and he was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.



*Colonel George Van Orden*

George Van Orden was born in Petoskey, Michigan, on 29 March 1878. He was appointed a U.S. Naval Cadet on 19 May 1893 and was transferred to the Marine Corps on 1 July 1899.

Van Orden was promoted to captain effective on 2 March 1903. During his career, he served with many Marine detachments on several U.S. Navy ships at Cavite, Philippine Islands, at the turn of the century; the Navy Yard, Washington, DC, in 1903; the Canal Zone in 1910; Army School of the Line in 1912; the Army General Staff College in Washington, DC, in 1920; and a second trip to Haiti in 1921.

Van Orden led a naval regiment comprised of Marines and sailors ashore at Port-au-Prince, Haiti, to protect American, French, and English interests there during World War I. He was promoted to major on 16 March 1917 and to lieutenant colonel on 26 April 1917.

During World War I, Van Orden commanded the 11th Regiment of the 5th Marine Brigade in France. He was decorated by the French government with the Order of the Black Star.

He was promoted to colonel on 4 March 1921. Van Orden died in January 1957 at Philadelphia Naval Hospital and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Major General Littleton W. T. Waller Jr.*

Littleton Waller Tazewell Waller Jr. was born 18 September 1886 in Norfolk, Virginia, and he began his military career in October 1907, when he was commissioned a Marine second lieutenant. He was ordered in 1908 to report for duty in the Panama Canal Zone. From there he was transferred to the American Legation Guard, Peking, China, where he remained until he was ordered to Marine Barracks Norfolk in 1910.

Waller was promoted in 1911 to first lieutenant, and he served until 1914 at various shore posts in the United States and was active in Marine target practice work. In 1914, he participated in the capture of Vera Cruz, Mexico, as a member of the Marine brigade, command of which was assumed by his father in May of that year. After Vera Cruz, he began his first sea duty, taking command of the Marine detachment aboard the USS *Michigan* in 1915. He attained the rank of captain in 1916 and, a year later, the temporary rank of major in command of the 81st Company, 1st Machine Gun Battalion.

In December 1917, Waller sailed to France as commander of the battalion, which had been redesignated the 6th Machine Gun Battalion. Transferred for a short time to the 3d Division, he returned to 2d Division to become division machine gun officer and fought in five major operations, during which his battalion was cited for its part in the Belleau Wood and Soissons offensives. He received, among other decorations, the French Legion of Honor and the Croix de Guerre. He was twice praised in French Army orders for courage and devotion to duty in the face of overwhelming odds.

Waller returned to the United States from France in 1919 and remained an active figure in the field of target practice and rifle marksmanship. He saw much duty in connection with international and Olympic rifle and pistol teams. He received his Reserve lieutenant colonel rank in November 1934 and returned to active duty as officer in charge of Marine target practice at Headquarters Marine Corps in June 1941. He was appointed a colonel in January 1942, and 13 months later became a brigadier general and director of personnel of the Marine Corps.

In September 1944, he was transferred to command of the Marine defenses on Johnston Atoll, Midway Island, and of naval bases in the Hawaiian Islands. He retired in 1946 after commanding the Marine garrison forces in the Pacific, and was promoted to major general having been commended in combat. He died on 14 April 1967 after an illness at Abington Memorial Hospital in Willow Grove, Pennsylvania. He was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.

*Brigadier General Frederick M. Wise*

Frederick May Wise was born in New York on 6 October 1877 and was appointed a second lieutenant in the Marine Corps on 1 July 1899. He was promoted to first lieutenant on 23 July 1900, to captain on 3 March 1908, to major on 29 August 1916, to lieutenant colonel on 26 March 1917, and to temporary colonel on 1 February 1918 during the war. He reverted to the rank of lieutenant colonel on 31 July 1919, but finally was promoted to colonel on 1 January 1922.

Wise participated in the China Campaign in 1900 and saw service in the Philippines the following year. He was in Cuba in 1907, 1908, and then again in 1912. In 1914, he was with the Marines at Vera Cruz, and a year later in Haiti. He also participated in the campaign in Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic, in 1916.

Wise was ordered to duty with the American Expeditionary Force in France and sailed on 27 June 1917. By 1 April 1918, he occupied a sector of front line trenches in command of the 2d Battalion, 5th Regiment, which they held until 12 May. From 1 to 28 June 1918, he assisted in stopping the enemy drive on Paris, and then participated in the offensive at Bois de Belleau. On 28 June 1918, he was ordered to the Army General Staff College at Langres, France, but at his own request was relieved and returned to duty with the 2d Battalion, 5th Regiment, rejoining them on 19 July 1918. From 20 to 25 July 1918, the battalion participated in the Aisne-Marne offensive.

On 19 August 1918, Wise was ordered to report to the commander and chief of the 4th Division to command the 59th U.S. Infantry. He reported for duty on 5 September 1918. From 14 to 18 September, his command took an active part in the Saint-Mihiel offensive, and from 26 September to 19 October they were in the Toul sector. On 20 November 1918, the 59th Infantry commenced the march into Germany. From 1 to 31 December 1918, the regiment was en route and stationed at Eller on the Moselle River. From 1 January to 9 February 1919, Wise commanded the 8th Brigade of the 4th Division.

On 24 January 1919, he was ordered home from France and arrived at Headquarters Marine Corps, Washington, DC, on 4 March

1919. On 1 May 1919, he was ordered to Haiti and arrived at Port-au-Prince on 8 May 1919. On 19 July, Wise was appointed chief of the Gendarmerie d'Haiti, in which capacity he served until 26 February 1921. On 28 April 1920, he was awarded the Haitian Médaille Militaire.

At this time, Wise had seen much hard service and his health had been failing for some time. After leaving Haiti in 1921, he spent considerable time in various hospitals in the United States, though he held a number of important positions between those times. The Marine Retiring Board found him incapacitated for further active service on 21 September 1925, and he was retired as a colonel on 19 January 1926. He was advanced to the rank of brigadier general on 16 January 1934. Wise died on 24 July 1940 at the U.S. Naval Hospital in Washington, DC, and was buried in Arlington National Cemetery.



# INDEX

## A

- Actual strength of Marine Corps, 1, 2, 5–7
- Adjutant and Inspector's Department (HQMC), xxi, 143–44
- Advanced Base Force, 3, 18, 52, 126, 175  
*See also* Cunningham, Alfred A.
- Aerodromes, 19, 124
- Aero Squadrons, 117
- Agamemnon* (ID 3004), 43
- Age limits, Marine aviators, 129
- Aigrefeuille, France, 109
- Aisne defensive, 59–69, 97–98, 115, 168, 190
- Aisne-Marne offensive (Soissons), 70–76, 98, 115, 168, 190, 193, 212  
*See also* Harry, Lee
- Aisne River, 84
- Alabama* (BB 8), 15
- Albany* (CL 23), 17, 104
- Allotments, 151
- Ambrose Lightship, 102
- America* (ID 3006), 77
- American Embarkation Center, Le Mans, France, 42, 105, 174  
*See also* Cole, Eli K.
- American Expeditionary Forces (AEF), xi, xv, 2–3, 13, 19, 23, 28, 35, 42, 44–47, 62, 69, 72, 96–98, 105–6, 112, 114, 116, 118, 120, 122, 130, 136, 141, 143, 178, 183, 195, 212
- American Peace Commission, Paris, France, 109
- Amiens, France, 59
- Annapolis, Maryland, 17–18, 160, 169, 173, 175, 184, 205
- Antitank guns, 118
- Antweiler, 93
- Archangel, Russia, 19
- Arizona* (BB 39), xv, 15
- Arkansas* (BB 33), 15, 100
- Arnes, valley of the, France, 82
- Armistice, 7, 9, 13, 15, 25, 27, 51, 89, 91, 102–4, 125, 135, 138, 190, 195
- Army of occupation (Third Army, USA), 93–97, 201
- Army, U.S.  
Composite Regiment, Third Army (USA), 136–37  
1st Division, 31, 34–36, 56, 60, 71, 137, 163  
2d Division, xi, 1–3, 31, 34, 39, 41–42, 48, 53–57, 59–62, 64, 69–72, 79–84, 86–90, 93, 96–99, 105, 112, 114, 118–19, 122, 135, 137, 140–42, 162, 172–73, 179, 186–87, 190, 192, 195, 205, 210  
3d Division, 60, 62, 86, 122, 207, 210  
4th Division, 48–50, 212  
6th Division, 48  
26th Division, 39, 48, 60, 66, 162–63  
32d Division, 48, 74, 76, 195, 205  
35th Division, 48  
41st Division, 42, 105, 173  
92d Division, 48  
8th Infantry Brigade (USA), 48, 50  
15th Field Artillery (USA), 54  
V (Fifth) Corps (USA), 87, 90  
51st Infantry Brigade (USA), 39, 48, 162–63  
First Army (USA), 78, 80, 87–88  
I (First) Corps (USA), 78  
1st Depot Division (USA), 42, 105, 173  
1st Division (AEF), 31, 34–36, 56, 60, 137, 163  
1st Field Signal Battalion (USA), 54  
41st Division (AEF), 42, 105, 173  
42d Division (AEF), 87  
4th Division (AEF), 50, 212  
4th Infantry Brigade (USA), 53  
4th Machine Gun Battalion (USA), 54  
9th Infantry, 39, 53–54, 162  
92d Division (AEF), 48  
102d Infantry (USA), 39, 48, 162  
2d Ammunition Train, 54

- 2d Division (AEF), xi, 1–3, 31, 34, 41–42, 48, 53–62, 64, 69–70, 72, 74–82, 84, 86–87, 89–90, 93, 96–99, 105, 112, 114, 118–19, 122, 135, 137
- 2d Engineers (USA), 54
- 2d Engineer Train (USA), 54
- 2d Field Artillery Brigade (USA), 48, 54
- 2d Headquarters Train and Military Police (USA), 54
- 2d Sanitary Train (USA), 54
- 2d Supply Train (USA), 54
- 2d Trench Mortar Battery (USA), 54
- 17th Field Artillery (USA), 48, 53–54, 179
- 64th Infantry Brigade (USA), 48
- Services of Supply (USA), 31, 42, 75, 109, 173, 187
- Third Army (USA), 94, 136
- III (Third) Corps (USA), 72
- 3d Division (AEF), 60, 62, 86, 122, 207, 210
- 3d Infantry Brigade (USA), 53
- 3d Machine Gun Battalion (USA), 30
- 35th Division (AEF), 48
- 32d Division (AEF), 48, 74, 76, 195, 205
- 12th Company, 44
- 12th Field Artillery (USA), 54
- 28th Division (USA), 60
- 26th Company, 44
- 26th Division (AEF), 39, 48, 60, 66, 162–63
- 23d Infantry (USA), 53
- Armentieres, France, 59
- Artillery captured by 2d Division, 118
- Astoria, Oregon, 18
- Athens, Greece, 19
- Atlanta, Georgia, 18, 148, 175
- Attigny-Voncq, Aisne River region, 84
- Automatic Rifle School, Overseas Depot, 30
- Aviation, 3, 23–24, 43, 50–51, 112, 116, 123–31, 137, 144, 175–76, 181
- Azores, 3, 13, 19, 43, 50, 52, 123, 128, 130–31, 164, 181
- B**
- Baker, Newton D., Secretary of War, 141–42
- Bakers School, Parris Island, South Carolina, 27
- Balloons, 123, 128, 164
- Band School, Parris Island, South Carolina, 27
- Bantry Bay, Ireland, xvi, 51, 101–2
- Barmant, France, 109
- Barnett, George (MajGen, Commandant, USMC), xi, xv, xxi, 143
- Barracks, Marine Corps
- Annapolis, 173, 205
  - Boston, 160
  - Mare Island, 21, 177, 181
  - New York, 177, 195, 204
  - Norfolk, 154, 160, 182, 188, 210
  - Parris Island, 30, 149, 173, 185, 192, 206
  - Pensacola, 164
  - Philadelphia, 175, 194, 206
  - Pontanezen, 109, 205
  - Port Royal, 168, 173
- Quantico, xv, 18, 21, 28, 40–41, 68, 76, 139, 167, 169–70, 178, 188, 190, 193–96, 201, 206
- repairs of, expenditures, 158
- Washington, DC, 176–77, 184, 188
- Wissahickon, 18
- Barrett, Charles D. (Maj, USMC), 94–95, 106, 160–61
- Base, U.S. Navy
- No. 13, Azores, 128, 130
  - No. 29, Cardiff, Wales, 3, 19, 43
- Bassens (Gironde), France, 109
- Battleships, 14, 51, 100–2
- Bayonet School, Overseas Depot, 30
- Bayonville-et-Chennery, France, 90
- Bearss, Hiram I. (Col, USMC), 38–39, 48, 162–63
- Beaufort, South Carolina, 18
- Beau Desert (Gironde), France, 109
- Beaumont, France, 89–90
- Beaurepaire Farm, France, 71
- Belgium, xvi, 93, 124, 126, 175
- Belleau Wood, France, xi, 2, 37, 56–57, 61–62, 65–67, 86, 96–97, 168, 170, 172, 184, 186, 201, 210
- See also* Bois de Belleau
- Bellefontaine, France, 93
- Belmar, New Jersey, 18
- Belval-Bois-des-Dames, France, 90
- Belval Forest, France, 89
- Berg, 93



- Blanc Mont Ridge, France, 68, 80–84, 96–98, 118, 184, 193
- Bois de Belleau, France, 49, 61–63, 65, 67, 69, 77, 170, 172, 212  
*See also* Belleau Wood
- Bois de Belval, France, 96
- Bois de la Brigade de Marine, France, 62–63, 98
- Bois de la Folie, France, 96
- Bois de Retz, France, 70
- Bolinas, California, 18
- Bolsheviki, 103
- Bombs, 125–26, 130, 175
- Bombing School, Overseas Depot, 22, 30
- Bordeaux, France, 39, 109, 136–37, 162
- Boston, Massachusetts, 17–19, 129, 160, 164, 172
- Bou-des-Bois, France, 58
- Bouresches, France, 2, 61, 63–64, 97–98, 168
- Bourmont (Haute-Marne), France, 41, 54
- Bourmont Training Area, France, 31–32, 36, 40–41, 56, 172
- Bouvron, France, 78
- Bouy, France, 84
- Bradman, Frederic L. (Col, USMC), 102
- Brest, France, xv, 40–43, 58, 74, 76–77, 94, 102, 105–6, 109, 111, 124, 136–37, 143, 154, 167, 175, 195, 205
- Brevannes, France, 36
- Brewster, David L. S. (Maj, USMC), 124, 164–65
- Bridgeheads  
 Château-Thierry, France, 60  
 Meuse River, 80, 87–90, 96–97
- British  
 Aviation Forces, 125  
 Distinguished Service Order, 119  
 Forces, 50  
 6th Battle Squadron, British Grand Fleet, 15, 100  
 Grand Fleet, 51, 100–1  
*Brooklyn* (CA 3), 15, 51, 103
- Büdesheim, 93
- Bulgars, 80
- Bundy, Omar (MajGen, USA), 38, 41, 54
- Burgbrohl, 93
- Butler, Smedley D. (BGen, USMC), 106–9, 166–67
- C
- Calais, France, 124
- Caldwell, New Jersey, 124
- Cambria, France, 79
- Camp Cabaud, France, 87
- Camp Carret, near Marseilles, France, 109
- Camp Covington, 109
- Camp Perry, Ohio, 121
- Camp Pontanezen, France, 74, 106–7, 111, 136, 167  
*See* Pontanezen Camp
- Camps of instruction, 18, 21–22, 149, 158
- Canadian officers, 29
- Cantigny, France, 60
- Cantonments, 156
- Cape Cod, Massachusetts, 17
- Cape May, New Jersey, 18, 123, 128–29
- Cap Haitien, Haiti, 146, 148, 205
- Carbon Blanc, France, 109
- Cardiff, Wales, xvi, 3, 19, 43
- Casino-de-Lilas (Bordeaux), France, 109
- Castine* (PG 6), 15
- Castletown Berehaven, Bantry Bay, Ireland, 51, 102
- Casual payments, 151–52
- Casualties, 2–3, 50, 52, 62, 88, 99, 112–16
- Catlin, Albertus W. (BGen, USMC), 40–41, 63, 66–68, 77, 170–71, 193
- Cavite, Philippine Islands, 3, 19, 195, 209
- Châlons-sur-Marne, France, 78, 84
- Champagne, France, 2, 68, 79, 81–83, 91, 97, 115, 117, 193
- Champagne-Marne defensive, 69, 99
- Chaplains, U.S. Navy, 47, 119
- Charleston* (C 22), 15, 197
- Charleston, South Carolina, 17–18, 155, 157
- Charleston, West Virginia, Navy ordnance plant, 18
- Chatham, Massachusetts, 17
- Château-Thierry sector, France, xvi, 2, 37, 54, 56–63, 66, 68, 70, 85, 96–97, 99, 115, 117–18, 183, 186, 190, 192–93

Châteauroux, France, 109  
 Chaudenay, France, 78  
 Chemin-des-Dames, France, 59  
 Chesapeake Bay, 100  
 Chief Paymaster, U.S. Marines, France, 152–53  
 China, 3, 13, 19, 146, 148, 165–68, 179–81, 190–91, 193, 199, 201, 203, 206–7, 210, 212  
 Chollas Heights, California, 18  
 Christiania, Norway, 19  
*Cincinnati* (C 7), 15, 195  
 Citations by French Army, 2, 63, 72, 117, 119  
 Civil War, U.S., 1  
 Claims Section, Paymaster's Department, 152  
 Clerical School, Parris Island, South Carolina, 27  
 Clothing, expenditures, 158  
 Cole, Edward B. (Maj, USMC), 40, 63, 65–66, 172  
 Cole, Eli K. (BGen, USMC), 41–42, 105–6, 173–74  
*Columbia* (C 12), 15  
 Commander in Chief (AEF), 34, 59–61, 80, 82–83, 90, 183, 190  
 Commercial Telegraph & Cable Co., Boston, Massachusetts, 17  
 Commissary storehouses, 155  
 Commutation of quarters, 158  
 Company clerks, 29  
*Connecticut* (BB 18), 15, 167  
*Constellation* (1854), 15  
 Contingent expenditures, 158  
 Convoying railroad trains, 109  
 Convoying troops across Atlantic, 45  
 Cooks, 27, 29  
 Cooks and Bakers School, Parris Island, South Carolina, 27  
 Copenhagen, Denmark, 19  
 Cornell University, 24  
 Council of National Defense, 156  
 Croix de Guerre (French), 2, 117, 119, 170, 172, 184, 190, 192, 194–95, 210  
 Croix d'Hins, France, 19, 109  
 Cruiser Force, 15, 103  
 Cuba, 3, 13, 19, 52, 148, 162, 170, 172, 177, 179, 184, 190, 193, 196–98, 201, 203, 205, 212  
 Cunningham, Alfred A. (Maj, USMC), 125–26, 175–76  
 Curtis, Maryland, 18

Cutts, Richard M. (Col, USMC), 103  
*Cyclops* (AC 4), 116  
 Czechoslovaks, 103–4

D

d'Avours Range at Le Mans, France, 122  
 Damblain, France, 36, 40, 56  
 Dampierre, France, 84  
 Daniels, Josephus (Secretary of the Navy), xvi, xxi, 141–42  
 Days in France; 4th Brigade (USMC), 118  
 Deaths, 2, 62, 112, 116, 159  
 Decorations, 31, 119, 172, 208, 210  
 Degoutte, Jean (Gen, French Army), 63  
*De Kalb* (ID 3010), 1, 35, 38, 40, 43–44, 124, 154  
*Delaware* (BB 28), 15, 100–1, 192  
 Demobilization, 48, 54, 73, 11, 138–42  
 Denmark, 19  
 Dental Corps (USN), 47, 119  
*Denver* (C 14)  
 Depots of supplies  
     Charleston, South Carolina, 18, 155, 157  
     Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, 18, 155–57  
     San Francisco, California, 18, 155, 157  
*Des Moines* (C 15), 15  
 Dieulouard, France, 77  
 Distinguished Service Crosses (American), 119, 168, 172, 184  
 Distinguished Service Medals (American), 56, 90, 106–7, 119, 167, 180, 184–85, 193, 196  
 Distinguished Service Order (British), 119  
 Divisions (AEF)  
     1st Division, 31, 34–36, 56, 60, 71, 137, 163  
     2d Division, xi, 1–3, 31, 34, 39, 41–42, 48, 53–57, 59–62, 64, 69–72, 79–84, 86–90, 93, 96–99, 105, 112, 114, 118–19, 122, 135, 137, 140–42, 162, 172–73, 179, 186–87, 190, 192, 195, 205, 210  
     3d Division, 60, 62, 86, 122, 207, 210  
     4th Division, 48–50, 212

6th Division, 48  
 26th Division, 39, 48, 60, 66,  
 162–63  
 32d Division, 48, 74, 76, 195, 205  
 35th Division, 48  
 41st Division, 42, 105, 173  
 92d Division, 48  
*See also* Army, U.S.  
 Division machine gun officer, 84, 86,  
 210  
*Dolphin* (PG 24), 15  
 Dominican Republic, 116, 146, 148,  
 160, 184, 188, 212  
 Dover, New Jersey, 17  
 Doyen, Charles A. (BGen, USMC),  
 34, 38, 40–41, 54–56, 177–78  
 Dunkirk, France, 19, 124  
 Dunlap, Robert H. (Col, USMC), 48,  
 179–80  
 Duration-of-war enlisted men, 138–39

## E

East San Pedro, California, 18  
 Edinburgh, Scotland, xvi, 102  
 El Cayey, Puerto Rico, 19  
 Ellis, Earl H. (LtCol, USMC), 58, 78,  
 94, 106  
 Emergency payments, 151–52  
 Enlistments, 8–11  
 Enlisted Staff School, Overseas Depot,  
 29, 31  
 Enrollments in the Reserve, 4, 8–9  
 Epidemic of influenza, 23, 143  
*See* influenza  
 Eppeldorf, Luxembourg, 93  
 Escorts, 14  
 Essen Hook (Blanc Mont), France, 81  
 Eureka, California, 18  
 Evans, Francis T. (Maj, USMC), 124,  
 175, 181–82  
 Evans, Frank E. (BGen, USMC), 183  
 Exermont, France, 87, 90  
 Expenditures, 157–58

## F

Feland, Logan (BGen, USMC), xvii,  
 36–37, 54, 73, 83, 94, 184–85  
 Female reservists, 6–7, 133  
 Field Musics School, Parris Island,  
 South Carolina, 27  
 Finances, 155  
 Firth of Forth, Scotland, 100–1

Flanders, Belgium, 79, 125  
*Florida* (BB 30), 15, 100–1  
 Florida Straits, 51  
 Flying Corps  
   France, 50, 125  
   United States, 24, 129  
*See also* aviation  
 Foch, Ferdinand Marshal (French  
 Army), 59–60, 69–70, 72,  
 79–81, 136  
 Forage, expenditures, 158  
 Fort Crockett, Galveston, Texas, 18,  
 50, 198  
 Fort Lafayette, New York, 17  
 Fort Lyons, Colorado, 18  
 Fort Muffin, Pennsylvania, 17  
 Fosse, France, 88, 90  
 Fossoy, France, 62  
 Forwarding Camp, Le Mans, France,  
 105  
 Fourragère, French, 2, 117, 192  
*Frederick* (CA 8), 15  
 French  
   Citations, 2, 62, 72, 117  
   Decorations, 107–8, 117, 119,  
   167, 190, 192, 194–95, 209–10  
   Flying Corps, 50, 125  
   Forces  
     Fourth French Army, 79–82,  
     84, 96, 98  
     IX French Army Corps, 34  
     Sixth French Army, 62  
   Officers serving with Marines, 29,  
   32, 119  
   Orders, 63–64, 72, 84, 117, 210  
 Freya Stellung, 88  
 Fryer, Eli T. (Col, USMC), 104  
 Fuel, expenditures, 158

## G

*Galveston* (C 17), 15, 51  
 Galveston, Texas, 18, 50, 198, 203  
 Gamburg-Andresen, Carl (Col,  
 USMC), 104  
 Gas, 22, 30  
 Geiger, Roy S. (Maj, USMC), 125, 175  
 Gendarmerie, Haitian, 3, 19, 52, 183,  
 199, 207, 213  
 Genicart, France, 109  
*George Washington* (ID 3018), 16, 102,  
 135  
*Georgia* (BB 15), 17  
 Georgia School of Technology, 24

Germainvilliers, France, 40  
 German High Seas Fleet, 101  
 Germany, xvi, 14, 19, 49, 61, 93–94,  
 96–97, 120, 122, 155, 168, 179,  
 190, 195–96, 201, 212  
 Gerstner Field, Lake Charles,  
 Louisiana, 18, 124, 127, 129  
 Gievres (Loire-et-Cher), France, 109  
 Gisors-Chaumont-en-Vixen, France,  
 58, 172  
 Gleaves, Albert (RAdm, USN), 35  
 Gondrecourt Training Area, 31, 36  
 Gouraud, Henri (Gen, French Army),  
 79–81, 96  
 Grand Bois de Saint Souplet, France,  
 82  
 Grand Fleet, British, 51, 100–1  
 Grange Neuve, France, 109  
 Great Lakes, Illinois, 129  
 Greece, 19  
 Greenbury, Maryland, 17  
 Guam, 3, 14, 19, 51–52, 181, 204, 207  
 Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, 3, 19, 170,  
 184, 190, 197, 201, 203  
 Guardia Nacional Dominicana, 3, 19,  
 52, 188, 199, 204

## H

Haines, Henry C. (Col, USMC), xxi,  
 144  
 Haiti, xix, 3, 14, 19, 52, 146, 148,  
 167, 170, 173, 179, 181–83,  
 188, 192–93, 196, 199, 205–9,  
 212–13  
 Hampton Roads, Virginia, 18, 106,  
 139  
*Hancock* (AP 3), 1, 35, 45, 177–78  
 Harbord, James G. (MajGen, USA),  
 54, 56–57, 63–64, 70, 72, 75,  
 186–87  
 Hart, Franklin A. (Capt, USMC), 111,  
 188–89  
 Harvard University, 24  
 Hatenfels, Germany, 94  
 Haute-Marne, France, 41, 54  
*Havana*, 35  
 Havre, France, 109  
 Hawaiian Islands, 3, 14, 181, 211  
 Headquarters Companies, U.S. Marine  
 Corps  
 5th Regiment, 1, 28, 31, 33–39,  
 41, 44, 49, 53, 55, 72–74, 83,  
 94, 122, 135, 162, 177–78, 184,  
 188, 201, 205, 212

6th Regiment, 1–2, 28, 33, 39–41,  
 63, 66–68, 72, 83, 117, 135,  
 162, 168, 170, 183, 190, 193,  
 206  
*See also*, Marine Corps, U.S.  
 Headquarters Detachment, Paris,  
 France (USMC), 109  
 Headquarters, Washington, DC, 18,  
 146–47  
*Helena* (PG 9), 16, 51  
*Henderson* (AP 1), 1, 35–36, 40, 43–45,  
 58, 137, 178  
 Herschbach, Germany, 94  
 Hill 142, 2, 61, 67, 97–98, 170  
 Hindenburg Line, 79, 88  
 Hingham, Massachusetts, 17  
 Historical Division, Marine Corps,  
 xi, xxi  
 Holland, 14, 19  
*See also* The Hague  
 Hospitals, 18, 151, 213  
 Hoyt, Leon W. (Maj, USMC), 120  
 Huey, James McE (LtCol, USMC),  
 103  
*Huntington* (CA 5), 16

## I

*Idaho* (SP 545), 16  
*Indiana* (BB 1), 160, 184  
 Indian Head, Maryland, 18  
 Inductions, 8–9  
 Influenza, 23, 143, 178  
 Inglewood, California, 18  
 Inor, France, 90  
 Inspector General's Department  
 (HQMC), 111  
 Inter-allied rifle championships, Le  
 Mans, France, 122  
 Interpreters, 109  
 Iona Island, New York, 17  
 Ireland, 51, 101–2  
 Isle of Ste. Anne (Nantes), France, 109  
 Issonge farmhouse, France, 66  
 Issoudun, France, 109  
 Italy, 19

## J

Japan, 19  
 Jassy, Romania, 19  
 Jaulny, France, 78, 97

## K

*Kansas* (BB 21), 17  
 Key West, Florida, 17–18  
 Killed in action, 112, 116, 159  
 Kilometers advanced, 119  
 Kingman, Matthew H. (Maj, USMC),  
 84–85, 192  
 Knight, Austin M. (RAdm, USN), 103

## L

La Baule, France, 109  
 La Loge farmhouse, France, 66  
 La Pallice, France, 109  
 La Playa, California, 18  
 La Rochelle, France, 109  
 La Teste (Gironde), France, 109  
 La Veuve, France, 84  
 Lake Charles, Louisiana, 18, 124, 127,  
 129  
 Lake Denmark, New Jersey, 17  
 Landres-et-Saint-Georges, France,  
 87–88, 96  
 Lansdowne, Pennsylvania, camp of  
 instruction bayonet team, 18  
 Lauchheimer, Charles H. (BGen,  
 USMC), 144  
 Lay, Harry R. (LtCol, USMC), 34,  
 40, 78  
 Lee, Harry (Col, USMC), 66, 68, 70,  
 72, 193–94  
 Le Franc aerodromes, France, 125  
 Le Mans, France, 42, 95, 105, 122,  
 161, 174  
 Leffincourt, France, 34, 84  
 Legion of Honor (French), 119, 170,  
 184, 194–95, 210  
 Lejeune, John A. (MajGen, USMC),  
 48, 54, 58, 73, 75–77, 80, 82,  
 90, 137, 143, 195–96, 202  
 Leland Stanford Junior University, 24  
 Lents, Oregon, 18  
 Les Islettes, France, 87  
 Létanne, France, 89  
*Leviathan* (SP 1326), 17, 111, 136,  
 143, 154  
 Line of communications, 31, 36, 38,  
 41, 178  
 Lironville, France, 78  
 Little, Louis McC (Col, USMC), 104  
 London, England, xvi, 3, 19, 136, 179,  
 189  
 Long, Charles G. (BGen, USMC),  
 143

Lormont, France, 109  
 Lorraine, France, 91, 163  
 Lost and destroyed records, 151  
*Louisiana* (BB 19), 16  
 Lugol, G. (Mayor of Meaux, France),  
 66  
 Luxembourg, 19, 93  
 Lynnhaven Roads, Chesapeake Bay,  
 100  
 Lys, Ypres-Lys offensive, 59, 99

## M

*Machias* (PG 5), 16  
 Machine guns captured, 118  
 Machine Gun School, Overseas  
 Depot, 29–31  
 Machine Gun School, Utica, New  
 York, 19, 23, 31  
 Madrid, Spain, 14, 19  
 Maintenance of Quartermaster's  
 Department, cost of, 158  
 Major General, Commandant,  
 USMC, xv, xviii, xxi, 5, 34, 36,  
 40–41, 143–44, 154, 160, 185,  
 191, 195–96, 200  
 Major, Harlan E. (Capt, USMC), 66  
 Major offensives, German, 59  
 Major operations, American, 1, 50, 70,  
 86, 98–99, 210  
 Managua, Nicaragua, 3, 19, 146, 148  
 Manonville, France, 78  
 Marans, France, 109  
 Marbache sector, France, 68, 77–78,  
 97, 115, 118, 168, 183, 190, 193  
 Marconi Wireless Co., Boston,  
 Massachusetts, 17  
 Mare Island, California, 17–18, 21, 26,  
 28, 156, 177, 181  
 Margut, 93  
 Marine Aviation Section, Miami,  
 Florida, 51, 123, 181  
 Marine Corps Reserve, 2, 4, 6–11,  
 20–23, 132–33, 138, 147, 155,  
 158, 168, 210  
 Marine Corps Reserve Flying Corps,  
 24, 129  
 Marine Corps, U.S.  
 Base Detachment, 5th Regiment,  
 140  
 Day Wing, Northern Bombing  
 Group, xi, 43, 50, 124–25, 127,  
 131  
 1st Aviation Squadron, 123–24

- 1st Battalion, 11th Regiment, 43  
 1st Battalion, 5th Regiment, 31, 33, 36, 207  
 1st Battalion, 6th Regiment, 33, 40–41  
 1st Casual Replacement Battalion, 44  
 1st Machine Gun Replacement Battalion, 44  
 1st Marine Aeronautic Company, 43, 50, 123, 131, 164, 181  
 1st Marine Aviation Force, 43, 116, 124  
 1st Regiment, 148, 166, 170, 173, 181, 194, 197–98  
 1st Replacement Battalion, 44  
 1st Replacement Depot, 42, 105, 174  
 1st Separate Machine Gun Battalion, 44  
 2d Battalion, 5th Regiment, 33, 49, 188, 212  
 2d Battalion, 6th Regiment, 33, 40–41, 135, 190  
 2d Casual Replacement Battalion, 44  
 2d Replacement Battalion, 44, 74, 205  
 3d Battalion, 5th Regiment, 33, 36, 39  
 3d Battalion, 6th Regiment, 33, 40–41  
 3d Battalion, 11th Regiment, 43  
 3d Replacement Battalion, 44  
 3d Separate Battalion, 44  
 3d Separate Machine Gun Battalion, 30  
 4th Brigade  
   Casualties, 3, 114–15  
   Citations, 2, 62–63, 117, 119, 141  
   Demobilization, 135–37, 139  
   Formed, 34  
   Operations, 3, 48, 56, 70, 79, 84, 93–99  
   Organizations composing, 33–34  
   Organized, 1, 40  
   Returned to United States, 135–37  
   Training, 23, 31–32, 41  
 4th Separate Battalion, 30, 44  
 5th Brigade, 3, 30, 32, 41–43, 105–11, 135–36, 139, 173–74, 188, 207  
 5th Brigade Machine Gun Battalion, 30, 41, 43, 53, 111, 135, 140, 188, 207  
 5th Machine Gun Battalion, 53  
 5th Regiment, 1, 28, 31, 33–39, 41, 44, 49, 53, 55, 72–74, 83, 94, 122, 135, 162, 177–78, 184, 188, 201, 205, 212  
 5th Separate Battalion, 44  
 6th Machine Gun Battalion, 140  
 6th Regiment, 140  
 6th Separate Battalion, 30, 44  
 7th Regiment, 61–62, 148  
 7th Separate Battalion, 45  
 8th Separate Battalion, 30, 45  
 9th Separate Battalion, xv, 45  
 10th Separate Battalion, 30  
 11th Regiment, 43, 106, 108–9, 122, 135, 180, 209  
 11th Separate Battalion, 30  
 12th Replacement Battalion, 45, 47  
 12th Separate Battalion, 136  
 13th Regiment, 30, 41, 43, 107, 109–11, 122, 135, 167, 199  
 15th Separate Battalion, 13673d Machine Gun Company, 34, 40  
 Machine Gun Company, Marine Corps, 33–34, 40  
   *See also* 8th Company, 5th Regiment, and 73d Company, 6th Regiment  
 Northern Bombing Group, xi, 43, 50, 124, 126–28, 175–76  
 Schleswig-Holstein Battalion, 136–37  
 Supply Company, 5th Regiment, 33  
 Supply Company, 6th Regiment, 34  
 Marne, River, salient, Valley, 60–61, 69, 71  
 Married men, rejections of, 10  
 Marseilles, France, 109  
 Marshall, California, 18  
 Marshfield, Oregon, 18  
*Massachusetts* (BB 2), 184  
 Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 19, 129  
 Massif de Notre-Dame-des-Champs, France, 82–83

- Massif du Blanc Mont, France, 82  
 Matthews, Calvin B. (Maj, USMC), 106  
*Mauretania* (1906), 105  
*Mayflower* (PY 1), 16  
 McCawley, Charles L. (BGen, USMC), 143, 154  
 McClellan, Edwin N. (Maj, USMC), ix, xi, xiii–xix, xxi  
 McDougal, Douglas C. (LtCol, USMC), 107, 109–10, 199–200  
 McGill, John F. (Col, USMC), 103  
 Meaux, France, 60, 64, 66  
 Médaille Militaire (French), 119, 213  
 Medals of honor (American), 119, 166, 170, 201, 203  
 Medeah Ferme, France, 82–83  
 Medical Corps of the Navy, 47, 116, 119  
 Mehun, France, 109  
 Menaucourt, France, 36  
*Mercury* (ID 3012), 131, 135–36  
 Mess sergeants, 29  
 Metz, France, 60, 67, 170  
 Meuse-Argonne, 50, 54, 68, 84–85, 87, 90, 95–98, 115, 118, 160, 163, 168, 179, 190, 192–93  
 Meuse-Argonne (Champagne), 2, 97, 115, 117  
 Meuse River, 80, 87–90, 96–97  
 Mexico, 51, 160, 162, 166, 172, 179, 184, 195, 197, 199, 201, 203, 205, 210  
 Miami, Florida, 51, 124, 127–31, 181  
*Michigan* (BB 27), 16, 210  
 Military colleges, graduates of, 20  
 Military police, 54, 109  
 Military stores, 158  
 Mineola, Long Island, New York, 19, 124, 127, 129  
 Mines, 51  
 Mine craters, 81  
 Miners and Sappers School, Overseas Depot, 31  
*Minnesota* (BB 22), xv, 14, 16, 51, 184  
 Minors, rejection of, 10  
 Miramas, France, 109  
 Missing, 115  
*Mississippi* (BB 23), 16  
 Mobilization Bureau, 18  
 Money expended, 150–51  
*Montana* (ACR 13), 16, 184  
 Montdidier, France, 60, 69  
 Montierchaume (Indre), France, 106  
 Montoir, France, 109  
 Montreuil-aux-Lions, France, 60, 66  
 Monts, France, 82  
 Morale of the Allies, 59, 61–62, 136, 149  
 Moroccan Division, 70–72  
 Moscou (P. C.), France, 56  
 Moselle River, 77, 97, 212  
 Mouzon, France, 90  
 Myers, John T. (BGen, USMC), 102  
 Murman Coast, Russia, 19, 51
- N
- Naix, France, 36  
 Nancy, France, 77  
 Nantes, France, 109  
 Nanteuil-le-Haudouin, France, 75  
 Nanteuil-sur-Marne, France, 66  
 National Naval Volunteers, Marine Corps, 4, 20, 132  
 Naval Air Station  
   Cape May, New Jersey, 18, 123, 128–29  
   Miami, Florida, 51, 125–28  
   Pensacola, Florida, 19, 123, 128, 181  
   San Diego, California, 18, 181–82  
 Naval ammunition depots, 17, 19  
 Naval district base, New London, Connecticut, 18  
 Naval experimental station, New London, Connecticut, 18  
 Naval hospitals, 18  
 Naval Militia, Marine Corps, 132  
 Naval prisons, 18  
 Navy allotment officer, 151  
 Navy Department, 8, 24, 34, 141–42, 157, 183, 191, 197  
 Navy Distinguished Service Medal, 56, 107, 167, 180, 193, 196  
 Navy, U.S.  
   Asiatic Fleet, xiii, 15, 103–4, 164, 203  
   Atlantic Fleet, 15, 100–3, 177, 190, 197, 203  
   Battleship Force One, 14–15, 103  
   Battleship Force Two, 14–15, 103  
   Division 6, Atlantic Fleet, 15, 101–2  
   Division 7, Atlantic Fleet, 15  
   Division 8, Atlantic Fleet, 15  
   Division 9, Atlantic Fleet, 15, 100–2

Pacific Fleet, 15, 103  
*Nebraska* (BB 14), 16  
Negro stevedores, 35  
*Nevada* (BB 36), 16, 101–2  
Nevers, France, 109  
Neville, Wendell C. (BGen, USMC),  
38, 63, 70, 73, 75, 77, 91, 98,  
137, 201–2  
New Brunswick, New Jersey, 18  
Newfoundland, 100  
*New Hampshire* (BB 25), 16  
*New Jersey* (BB 16) 16, 160  
New London, Connecticut, 17–18,  
184  
*New Mexico* (BB 40), 16  
*New Orleans* (CL 22), 17, 104  
New pay roll, 152  
Newport News, Virginia, 131  
Newport, Rhode Island, 17, 204–5  
New York, 11, 17–19, 31, 40, 43, 58,  
77, 102, 105, 124, 136–37, 143,  
146–47  
Nicaragua, xvii, 3, 14, 19, 52, 146,  
148, 164, 166, 180, 185, 188,  
192–93, 197, 199, 200–1, 203,  
208  
Nieder Bieber, Germany, 94  
Noncommissioned Officers School,  
Parris Island, South Carolina,  
27  
Norfolk, Virginia, 17–18, 26, 154, 157,  
182, 184, 188, 205, 210  
*North Carolina* (ACR 12), 16  
*North Dakota* (BB 29), 16  
North Head, Washington, 18  
North Island, California, 17, 177  
Norway, 19  
Notre-Dame-des-Champs, France,  
82–83  
Noyers, Saint-Aignan-Noyers, France,  
109  
Noyon-Montdidier drive, France, 69

O

Observation squadrons, 50, 125  
Observers, 46, 50  
Office of the Chief Paymaster, United  
States Marines, France, 152–53  
Office of the Judge Advocate General,  
18  
Office of the Major General  
Commandant (USMC),  
143–44, 191

Officers' school, 30, 160, 173, 181, 205,  
207  
Officers' training camps, 22–23  
Oil supply of Allies, 51  
Oise-Aisne offensive, 99  
*Oklahoma* (BB 37), 16, 102  
Olongapo, Philippine Islands, 3, 19,  
181  
*Olympia* (C 6), 16  
Operations, general, xv, xvii, 1, 3,  
48–52, 61–62, 64, 83, 97  
*See also* Aisne-Marne, Belleau  
Wood, Blanc Mont Ridge,  
Champagne, Châteaue-Thierry,  
Marbache, Meuse-Argonne,  
Saint-Étienne, Saint-Mihiel,  
Soissons, Verdun  
*Orizaba* (ID 1536), 135  
Orkney Islands, 100–1  
Orleans, Massachusetts, French Cable  
Co., 17  
Ostend, Belgium, xvi, 124  
Osterhout, George H. (Capt, USMC),  
66  
Otter Cliffs, Maine, 17  
Overseas Depot, Marine Barracks  
Quantico, Virginia, 22, 28–30,  
43

P

Palestine, 80  
Paoli, Pennsylvania, 18  
Paris, France, 3, 19, 38, 43, 49, 60–61,  
77, 109, 122, 136, 143, 153,  
161, 170, 212  
Paris-Metz Highway, France, 60, 67,  
170  
Parris Island, South Carolina, 18,  
21, 26–28, 30, 42, 149, 156,  
173–74, 185, 194, 200, 206  
Pauillac, France, 19, 124  
Pay for personnel, expenditures,  
150–51  
Paymaster, Chief, United States  
Marines, France, 152–53  
Paymaster's clerks, Marine Corps,  
145–53  
Paymaster's Department, 145–53  
Payroll, new, 152  
Pay School, Parris Island, South  
Carolina, 27  
Peace memorandum No. 1, 91–92  
Peace treaty, 94, 138



- Pearl Harbor, Hawaiian Islands, 3, 19, 52, 183
- Peking, China, xiii, 3, 19, 52, 146, 148, 180, 190, 193, 201, 203, 210
- Pennsylvania* (BB 38), 16, 102, 177
- Pensacola* (1859), 197
- Pensacola, Florida, 17, 19, 23, 128, 164, 175, 181, 195
- Pentland Firth, 101
- Perkins, Ernest A. (Maj, USMC), 111
- Pershing, John J. (Gen, USA), xv, 34, 36, 46, 53, 56–57, 61, 72, 136–37, 141–42, 179, 183–86, 195
- Petail, Henri-Philippe (French Army), 36, 64, 71, 73, 79–81
- Petrograd, Russia, 19
- Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, xiii, 12, 17–18, 26, 34, 177
- Pistol matches, 121–22, 165, 210
- Pittsburgh* (CA 4), 16, 51
- Plan directeur, 62
- Planning section, 144
- Plebiscite, 136
- Pocahontas*, 45
- Point Arguello, California, 18
- Pointe de Grave, France, 137
- Point Isabel, Texas, 17
- Police sergeants, 109
- Ponta Delgada, Azores, 19, 43, 50, 123, 130
- Pont-à-Mousson, France, 77, 97, 183
- Pontanezen Camp, Brest, France, 74 106–7, 109, 111, 136, 167, 205
- Pont-Saint-Vincent, France, 78
- Port-au-Prince, Haiti, 146, 148, 188, 209
- Portland, England, 101
- Portland, Maine, 17
- Portsmouth, New Hampshire, 17–18
- Portuguese decorations, 119, 164
- Pouilly, France, 90
- Prairie* (AD 5), 16, 177, 193
- President of the United States, actions of, 4, 9, 34–35, 40, 102, 137, 156, 187, 190
- Price, Charles F. B. (Maj, USMC), 136
- Printz Eitel Fredrich*, 35
- See also De Kalb*
- Prison
- Guards, 111
  - Naval, 18, 195
  - Officers, 109
- Prisoners, 64, 71–72, 77, 80, 82–83, 103, 118
- Provisions, expenditures, 158
- Provost guards, 38, 109
- Provost Marshal General (USA), 8–9, 24
- Provost marshals, 38, 109, 162
- Prüm, Germany, 93
- Public works, 157
- Pueblo* (CA 7), 16
- Puerto Rico, 14, 19, 166, 172, 174, 184, 196
- Puget Sound, Washington, 17
- Purchases under second deficiency act, from United States Army, 158

## Q

- Quantico, Virginia, xv, 22, 67, 127–28, 147, 156, 164
- Quarters, commutation of; expenditures, 158
- Quartermaster's Department, 154–58

## R

- Radio, Virginia, 17
- Radio School, Parris Island, South Carolina, 27
- Radio stations, etc., 2, 17, 19
- Rations, expenditures, 155
- Recruit Depots
- Mare Island, California, 26, 28
  - Norfolk, Virginia, 26
  - Parris Island, South Carolina, 21, 26–28
  - Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, 26
  - Rejections of applicants at, 10
  - Training at, 32
- Recruiting and transportation, expenditures, 158
- Recruiting statistics, 8–12
- Rejections of applicants for enlistment, 10
- Remenuville, France, 78
- Repairs of barracks, expenditures, 158
- Replacements, xv, 32, 44–45, 140
- Reserve, Flying Corps, 24, 129
- “Reserve supplies, USMC,” expenditures, 158
- Retired officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men, 5–7
- Return of Marines from Europe, 135–37

- Rheims, France, 59, 81, 83, 96  
 Rheims Massif, France, 80  
 Rheinbrohl, Germany, 93  
 Rhine River Patrol (USMC), 93  
*Rhode Island*, (BB 17), 16  
 Richards, George (BGen, USMC), 145  
 Rifle competitions and practice, 120–22, 165  
 Rifles captured, 118  
 Rochefort, France, 109  
 Rockport, Massachusetts, Postal Telegraph & Cable Co., 17  
 Rome, Italy, 19  
 Romorantin (Loire-et-Cher), France, 109  
 Roosevelt Field, Mineola, Long Island, New York, 127, 129  
 Roosevelt, Franklin D. (Assistant Secretary of the Navy), 140, 142  
 Rosyth, Scotland, 100–2  
 Russia, 19, 51  
 Russian Island, Siberia, 103–4  
 Rye Beach, Maine, 17
- S
- Saint-Aignan-Noyers, France, 105, 109  
 Saint-Étienne, France, 81–83, 97–98  
 Saint-Mihiel offensive, 48–50, 68, 78, 85, 96–98, 115, 118, 163, 168, 183, 190, 192–93, 212  
 Saint-Nazaire, France, 35–36, 38, 40, 43, 109, 131, 178  
 Saint-Sulpice (Gironde), France, 109  
 Samoa, 14  
*San Diego* (CA 6), 17, 51  
 San Diego, California, 18, 21, 129, 177, 181–82, 192, 200, 206  
 San Francisco, California, 18, 146, 148, 155, 157, 168, 186, 201  
 San Juan, Puerto Rico, 3, 14, 19, 184  
*Santa Paula* (ID 1590), 135  
 Santiago, Dominican Republic, 146, 148  
 Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic, 3, 14, 19, 52, 112, 146, 160, 162, 164, 176–77, 179, 184–85, 188, 193–94, 196, 199, 212  
 Sappers, 31  
 Sarry, France, 78  
 Savenay, France, 109  
 Sayville, New York, 17  
 Scapa Flow, Orkney Islands, xvi, 100–1  
 Scarponne, France, 77  
 Schools, U.S. Marine Corps  
     Army balloon, 128–29  
     Army candidates, 23  
     Automatic rifle, 30  
     Bakers, 27  
     Band, 27  
     Bayonet, 30  
     Bombing, 30  
     Clerical, 27  
     Cooks, 27  
     Enlisted staff, 29, 31  
     Field musics, 27  
     Gas, 30  
     Machine gun, 19, 23, 30–31  
     Mechanics, 129  
     Miners and sappers, 31  
     Noncommissioned officers, 27  
     Officers, 30, 160  
     Overseas depot, 22, 29  
     Pay, 27, 149  
     Quartermaster sergeants, 154  
     Radio, 27  
     Scout snipers 30  
     Signal, 27  
 Sea duty, 14, 22  
 Sea Girt, New Jersey, 122  
*Seattle* (ACR 11), 16, 35, 188  
 Secretary of the Navy, xvi, xxi, 9, 34, 40, 93, 96, 101–2, 140–42, 205  
 Secretary of War, 8, 24, 34, 141–42  
 Selective service law, 9  
 Shearer, Thomas R. (Capt, USMC), 127  
 Siberia, 51, 103  
 Sibert, W. L. (MajGen, USA), 35  
*Siboney* (AD 2999), 106, 135  
 Signal Battalion, Paoli, Pennsylvania, 18  
 Signal School, 27  
 Silver bands for colors, 97  
 Slovaks, 103  
 Smith, Holland M. (Maj, USMC), 41  
 Snyder, Harold C. (Col, USMC), 73–74, 94, 205–6  
 Soissons, France, xvi, 60, 69–71, 73, 96, 118, 168, 184, 186  
 Somme, France, 59, 84, 109  
 Somme-Py, France, xvi, 81  
 Sommerance, France, 90  
 Souain, France, 105

Souain-Suippes area, France, 79  
*South Carolina* (BB 26), 16  
*South Dakota* (ACR 9), 16  
 Spain, 14, 19, 162, 166, 184, 203  
 Spanish War, 1, 177  
 Special Assistant, Quartermaster's  
 Department (HQMC), 155  
 Special disbursing agents, 145–48  
 Stadenburg, Germany, 125  
 Staff School, enlisted and general, 29,  
 191  
 States, enlistments by, 8–12  
 States, Naval Militia, Marine Corps,  
 132  
 Statutory strength of Marine Corps,  
 4–7  
*See also* Strength of Marine Corps  
 St. Julien's Creek, Virginia, 17  
 St. Loubès, France, 109  
*St. Louis* (C 20), 16  
 Stockholm, Sweden, 19  
 Storehouses, 155–56  
 Stores, military expenditures, 155,  
 157–58  
 St. Quentin, France, 8  
 Strength of Marine Corps, 1–2, 4–7,  
 10, 26, 28, 123, 127, 132–33,  
 139  
 Student Army Training Corps, 24–25  
 Suarce sector, France, 48  
 Submarines, 35, 101–2, 124  
 Suippes, France, 79, 84  
 Suippes River, France, 80–81  
 Suippes-Somme Suippes-Nantivet  
 area, France, 84  
 Summary of operations, 97  
 Supplies, expenditures, 158  
 Surrender of the German High Seas  
 Fleet, 101–4  
 Sursol (Gironde), France, 109  
 Swiss border, 48

## T

Target practice, 100, 120, 144, 190,  
 199, 210  
 Tatoosh, Washington, 18  
 Taylor, Charles B. (LtCol, USMC),  
 103  
 Tebbs Jr., Richard H. (Maj, USMC),  
 103  
 Technical engineer, Quartermaster's  
 Department, 155  
*Texas* (BB 35), 16, 100

The Hague, Holland, 14, 19  
 Thiaucourt, France, 78, 97  
 Tiburon, California, 18  
 Tigny, France, 60, 71  
 Toul, France, 56, 212  
 Toulon, France, 56, 109  
 Toulon sector, France, 97, 115, 162  
 Tours, France, 105–6  
 Traffic police, 111  
 Training of enlisted men, 26–32  
 Training of officers, 20–25  
 Transportation and recruiting,  
 expenditures, 158  
 Travel allowance, 152  
 Trench mortars, 118  
 Tuckerton, New Jersey, 18  
 Turnage, Allen H. (Maj, USMC), 111,  
 207–8

## U

U-boats, 101  
*See also* Submarines  
 Universities  
 Cornell, 24  
 George Washington, xiii  
 Georgia School of Technology, 24  
 Harvard, 24  
 Kansas, 24  
 Leland Stanford Junior, 24  
 Louisiana State, 195  
 Minnesota, 24  
 North Carolina, 24, 207  
 Ohio Wesleyan, 181  
 Pennsylvania, xiii  
 Tennessee, 168  
 Texas, 24  
 Virginia Military Institute, 24  
 Washington, 24  
 Wisconsin, 24  
 Yale, 24  
 Usine Brûlée, France, 109  
*Utah* (BB 31), 16, 102  
 Utica, New York, 19, 23, 31

## V

Vadenay-Bouy-la-Veuve-Dampierre  
 area, France, 84  
 Vanault-les-Dames, France, 56  
 Van Orden, George (Col, USMC),  
 106, 108, 209  
 Vaux-en-Dieulet, France, 89  
 Vaux, France, 2, 61–62, 96, 99

Velaine-en-Haye, France, 78  
Verdun, France, xvi, 32, 54, 56, 85, 91,  
96–97, 115, 118, 162, 168, 172,  
192  
*Vermont* (BB 20), 17, 188, 197  
Vierzy, France, 71, 73  
*Virginia* (BB 13), 17  
Virgin Islands, 3, 14, 19, 52, 146, 148  
Virginia Military Institute, 24, 192,  
196  
Vitry-le-François, France, 56, 58, 172  
Villers-lès-Nancy, France, 77  
Vivieres, France, 70  
Vladivostok, Siberia, 51, 103–4  
Voncq, France, 84  
*Von Steuben* (ID 3017), 40–41, 43–44,  
96  
Vulte, Nelson P. (Maj, USMC), 101

W

Wakefield, Massachusetts, 18  
Wales, 3, 19, 43  
Waller Jr., Littleton W. T. (Maj,  
USMC), 66, 73, 84, 86, 162,  
210  
Warehouses, 2, 109, 157  
Wars  
    Civil, 1  
    Germany, declared against, 155  
    Spanish, 1, 170, 177, 183, 197,  
    201  
War Industries Board, 156  
War Risk Bureau, 151  
War Risk Insurance Act, 151  
Washington, DC, 11, 17–18, 136–37,  
146–47  
Waxweiler, Germany, 93

Wehr, Germany, 122  
Wellfleet, Massachusetts, 17  
West Indies, 112, 156–57  
Western Union Co., Boston,  
    Massachusetts, 17  
Weymouth, England, 101  
Wiesbaum, Germany, 93  
*Wilhelmina* (ID 2168), 135  
Wills, Davis B. (Maj, USMC), 153  
*Wilmington* (PG 8), 16, 51  
Winthrop, Maryland, 18, 21  
Wirgman, Harold F. (Maj, USMC),  
    103  
Wise, Frederick M. (Col, USMC),  
    48–50, 212–13  
Wise Jr., William C. (Maj, USMC),  
    106  
Wissahickon Barracks, New Jersey, 18  
Women, female reservists, 67, 133, 150  
Wounded, 52, 66, 68, 77, 85, 115–16,  
    151  
*Wyoming* (BB 32), 17, 100

X

Xammes, France, 78, 97

Y

Yale University, 24  
Yokohama, Japan, 19  
*Yorktown* (PG 1), 17  
Yorktown, Virginia, 18  
Ypres-Lys offensive, 99

Z

Zeebruges, Belgium, xvi















History Division • U.S. Marine Corps • Quantico, VA